

<b>AMENDMENT OF SOLICITATION/MODIFICATION OF CONTRACT</b>			1. CONTRACT ID CODE	PAGE OF PAGES
				1 of 4
2. AMENDMENT/MODIFICATION NO. 3	3. EFFECTIVE DATE 20-Feb-2003	4. REQUISITION/PURCHASE REQ. NO.	5. PROJECT NO. (If applicable)	
6. ISSUED BY US Army Corps of Engineers, Kansas City District 760 Federal Building, 601 East 12th Street Kansas City, Missouri 64106-2896	CODE	7. ADMINISTERED BY (If other than item 6)	CODE	

8. NAME AND ADDRESS OF CONTRACTOR (No., street, county, State and ZIP Code)	(x) 9a. AMENDMENT OF SOLICITATION NO. DACA41-02-B-0003
	9B. DATED (SEE ITEM 11) 1/16/2003
	10A. MODIFICATION OF CONTRACT/ORDER NO.
	10B. DATED (SEE ITEM 13)
CODE	FACILITY CODE

11. THIS ITEM ONLY APPLIES TO AMENDMENTS OF SOLICITATIONS

The above number solicitation is amended as set forth in Item 14. The hour and date specified for receipt of Offers  is extended,  is not extended.

Offers must acknowledge receipt of this amendment prior to the hour and date specified in the solicitation or as amended, by one of the following methods:  
(a) By completing Items 8 and 15, and returning \_\_\_ copies of the amendment; (b) By acknowledging receipt of this amendment on each copy of the offer submitted; or (c) By separate letter or telegraph which includes a reference to the solicitation and amendment numbers. FAILURE OF YOUR ACKNOWLEDGMENT TO BE RECEIVED AT THE PLACE DESIGNATED FOR THE RECEIPT OF OFFERS PRIOR TO THE HOUR AND DATE SPECIFIED MAY RESULT IN REJECTION OF YOUR OFFER. If by virtue of this amendment you desire to change an offer already submitted, such change may be made by telegram or letter, provided each telegram or letter makes reference to the solicitation and this amendment, and is received prior to the opening hour and date specified.

12. ACCOUNTING AND APPROPRIATION DATA (If required)

13. THIS ITEM APPLIES ONLY TO MODIFICATIONS OF CONTRACTS/ORDERS, IT MODIFIES THE CONTRACT/ORDER NO. AS DESCRIBED IN ITEM 14.

(x) A. THIS CHANGE ORDER IS ISSUED PURSUANT TO: (Specify authority) THE CHANGES SET FORTH IN ITEM 14 ARE MADE IN THE CONTRACT ORDER NO. IN ITEM 10A.
B. THE ABOVE NUMBER CONTRACT/ORDER IS MODIFIED TO REFLECT THE ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGES (such as changes in paying office, appropriation date, etc.) SET FORTH IN ITEM 14, PURSUANT TO THE AUTHORITY OF:
C. THIS SUPPLEMENTAL AGREEMENT IS ENTERED INTO PURSUANT TO AUTHORITY OF:
D. OTHER (Specify type of modification and authority)

E. IMPORTANT: Contractor  is not,  is required to sign this document and return \_\_\_\_\_ copies to the issuing office.

14. DESCRIPTION OF AMENDMENT/MODIFICATION (Organized by UCF section headings, including solicitation/contract subject matter where feasible.)

Barracks - 1st BDE, FY03 - PN 10538, Fort Riley, Kansas

The Solicitation is amended in accordance with the attached pages.

Except as provided herein, all terms and conditions of the document referenced in Item 9A or 10A, as heretofore changed, remains unchanged and in full force and effect.

15A. NAME AND TITLE OF SIGNER (Type or print)	16A. NAME AND TITLE OF CONTRACTING OFFICER (Type or print)
15B. CONTRACTOR/OFFEROR  (Signature of person authorized to sign)	16B. UNITED STATES OF AMERICA BY _____ (Signature of Contracting Officer)
15C. DATE SIGNED	16C. DATE SIGNED

The SOLICITATION is amended as follows:

1. SPECIFICATIONS:

CLARIFICATION: Only one Security Acknowledgement Form must be returned.

**SPECIAL PHASING SCHEDULE**

Upon completion of the new barracks the Contractor shall allow 90 days for the owner to move before demolition of existing building no's 7044 and 7230. Upon completion of the new Battalion Headquarters the Contractor shall allow 90 days for the owner to move before demolition of existing building no's. 7046, 7047, 7048, 7031 and 7028.

- a. ~~Revised Sections:~~ The following sections are deleted and replaced with revised sections of the same numbers. Copies of the revised sections are included. For convenience, changes have been emphasized by underlining text changed from the previous issue or indication of text deleted. However, all portions of the revised specification pages shall apply whether or not changes have been indicated. Copies of the revised sections are included in this amendment.

01100: paragraph titled "Unexploded Ordnance" is deleted in its entirety.

01100: paragraph titled "Schedule of Work in Range Areas" is deleted in its entirety.

01100: paragraph titled "Special Phasing Schedule"

01130: multiple changes throughout the section

Extension of Design Scope of Work: multiple changes throughout section

Enclosure 1: title change from "Site Design" to "Design Guidance"

Enclosure 1: paragraph titled "Survey Requirements"

Enclosure 4: title change from "Geotechnical Requirements" to "Pavement Design Requirements"

Enclosure 4: paragraph titled "Design considerations"

03300: paragraph titled "Aggregates"

07240: paragraph titled "Mildew Resistance"

07240: paragraph titled "Sheathing Board"

09250: paragraph titled "Gypsum Board for Wall Tile or Tile Base Applied with Adhesive"

15400: new paragraph 1.7 titled "Battalion Headquarters and Company Operations Facilities (2-COF & 4-COF)"

15400: new paragraph 1.8 titled "Condensate Drain Lines for Fan-Coils (FCU-1A, FCU-2A, and FCU-1B), Heating and Ventilating Units (HVV-1A, 2A, 3A, 4A, 1B, & 2B), and Blower Coils (BC-1A, BC-2A, & BC-1B) Located in Company Operation Facilities (2-COF & 4-COF)"

15895: new paragraph 1.5 titled "Battalion Headquarters"

15895: new paragraph 1.6 titled "Company Operations Facilities"

15895: new paragraph 1.7 titled "Blower Coils BC-1A, BC-2A, BC-1B, BC-1C"

15990: new paragraph 1.7 titled "Tab of 2-COFS, 4-COFS, and Battalion Headquarters Buildings"

2. DRAWINGS:

- a. ~~Clarification:~~ The following drawings were added or revised by Amendment 0002, but were not called out in the list of changes.

C1.0 (Added)

C2.3 (Revised)

C2.4 (Revised)

- b. ~~Changed Sheets~~: The following changes have been made as indicated. Copies of the sheets listed are included in this amendment.

~~VOLUME 1~~

~~Revised Sheets~~

C12.1

~~VOLUME 2A~~

~~Revised Sheets~~

C12.1

~~Deleted Sheets~~

C13.1

~~New Sheets~~

D109

~~VOLUME 2B~~

~~Revised Sheets~~

M10.1

AS4.3

AS4.5

AS4.6

AS4.7

AS4.9

AS4.10

AS4.12

AS5.1

AS5.2

AS5.3

AS6.1

AS6.2

BS4.3

BS4.5

BS4.6

BS4.7

BS4.9

BS5.1

BS5.2

BS6.1

BS6.2

VOLUME 2C

~~Revised Sheets~~

CM5.1  
CM10.1  
CM11.4

3. Bidders are required to acknowledge receipt of this amendment on the Bidding Form, in the space provided, or by separate letter or telegram prior to opening of bids. Failure to acknowledge all amendments may cause rejection of the bid.

4. Bids will be received until 2:00 p.m., local time, 5 March 2003, in Room 748 Federal Building, 601 E. 12<sup>th</sup> Street, Kansas City, Missouri 64106-2896. and at that time publicly opened.

## SECTION 01100

## GENERAL

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 INQUIRIES

Pursuant to SECTION 00100 paragraph titled "Explanation to Prospective Bidders", any inquiries regarding this Invitation, before bids are opened, should be addressed to the District Engineer, Kansas City District, Corps of Engineers, 700 Federal Building, Kansas City, Missouri 64106, ATTN: Mr. Robert Smith. Inquiries for which oral explanation or advice on the plans and specifications will suffice may be referred to Mr. Smith by calling Area Code 816-983-3277. Telephone calls concerning the mailing of plans and specifications should be made to Contracting Division at Area Code 816-983-3975. Collect telephone calls will not be accepted. (KCDO APR 84)

## 1.2 SUPERINTENDENCE OF SUBCONTRACTORS

(a) The Contractor shall be required to furnish the following:

(1) If more than 50% and less than 70% of the value of the contract work is subcontracted, one superintendent shall be provided at the site and on the Contractor's payroll to be responsible for coordinating, directing, inspecting and expediting the subcontract work.

(2) If 70% or more of the value of the work is subcontracted, the Contractor shall be required to furnish two such superintendents to be responsible for coordinating, directing, inspecting and expediting the subcontract work.

(b) If the Contracting Officer, at any time after 50% of the subcontracted work has been completed, finds that satisfactory progress is being made, he may waive all or part of the above requirement for additional superintendence subject to the right of the Contracting Officer to reinstate such requirement if at any time during the progress of the remaining work he finds that satisfactory progress is not being made.

## 1.3 IDENTIFICATION OF EMPLOYEES

The Contractor shall be responsible for furnishing to each employee and for requiring each employee engaged on the work to display identification as may be approved and directed by the Contracting Office. All prescribed identification shall immediately be delivered to the Contracting Officer, for cancellation upon the release of any employee. When required by the Contracting Officer the Contractor shall obtain and submit fingerprints of all persons employed or to be employed on the project.

## 1.4 FORT RILEY ACCESS CONTROL

Fort Riley is implementing physical security measures in the form of access control. These measures will apply to all contractors and their employees.

Fort Riley will require each vehicle to have either a temporary or permanent identification marker attached. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to monitor and control all company and employee identification markers and comply with Fort Riley's requirements for issuing and returning these markers.

#### 1.4.1 Minimum Requirements

##### a. Contractor

- (1) Current Lists of all employees.
- (2) Current Lists of all subcontractors and employees.
- (3) Company identification visibly marked on all vehicles.
- (4) Current state vehicle registrations.
- (5) Proof of liability insurance.
- (6) Valid state drivers license.
- (7) Picture identification.

##### b. Each Employee

- (1) Contractor-provided picture identification.
- (2) Written verification of employment.
- (3) If the employee drives a personally owned vehicle to the job site: valid state drivers license, current state vehicle registration, and proof of liability insurance.

#### 1.4.2 ID Cards

Picture identification cards shall be visibly worn at all times while on the installation.

#### 1.4.3 Responsibility for Compliance

The Contractor shall be responsible for complying with all security conditions as determined by Fort Riley and shall be responsible for any additional requirements that may be implemented.

#### 1.5 APPLICATION OF WAGE RATES

The inclusion of the Davis-Bacon Act General Wage Decision or the Service Contract Act Wage Determination in the solicitation is a statutory requirement. It is not a representation by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers that any specific work task can be performed by any specific trade. Which work tasks can be performed by what trades depends on and is determined by the prevailing area practice for the local area where the contract is being performed. It is the sole responsibility of the bidder to determine and comply with the prevailing area practice. Inquiries regarding a prevailing area practice should be directed to the Corps of Engineers, Contractor Industrial Relations Specialist (telephone number 816-983-3723) or to the Department of Labor Regional Wage and Hour Division.

Application of wage rates and fringe benefits: For the application of the wage rates and fringe benefits contained in the Decisions of the Secretary of Labor, attached to and a part of this contract, all work required within

5 feet outside building lines shall be considered Building Construction.

Highway Construction rates apply to the construction, alteration or repair of roads, streets, highways, runways, taxiways, alleys, trails, paths, parking areas, and other similar projects.

All other construction not defined herein as Building Construction or Highway Construction shall be considered Heavy Construction.

#### 1.6 PAYMENTS TO SUBCONTRACTORS

The Contractor's attention is directed to CONTRACT CLAUSE titled "Payment Under Fixed-Price Construction Contracts." In addition to the requirements set forth in the referenced paragraph, the Government will reimburse the Contractor, upon request, for amount of premiums paid by the subcontractors for performance and payment bonds (including coinsurance and reinsurance agreements, when applicable) after the Contractor furnishes evidence of full payment to the surety.

#### 1.7 PAYMENTS TO CONTRACTOR (KCD MAY 90 - FORMERLY FAR 52.2/9101(a))

The following is an example of a Contractor's release of claims clauses required to comply with the provisions of paragraph (h) of the CONTRACT CLAUSE titled "Payments Under Fixed-Price Construction Contracts":

##### RELEASE OF CLAIMS

The undersigned Contractor under contract dated \_\_\_\_\_, 2000, between the United States of America and said Contractor for the \_\_\_\_\_ located at \_\_\_\_\_, in accordance with paragraph (h) of the CONTRACT CLAUSE titled "Payments Under Fixed-Price Construction Contracts" of said contract, hereby releases the United States, its officers, agents, and employees from any and all claims arising under or by virtue of said contract or any modification or change thereof except with respect to those claims, if any, listed below:

(Here itemize claims and amounts due.)

#### 1.8 PARTNERING

The Government intends to encourage the foundation of a cohesive partnership with the Contractor and its subcontractor. This partnership will be structured to draw on the strengths of each organization to identify and achieve mutual goals with the intent to complete the Contract within budget, on schedule and in accordance with plans and specifications. This partnership will be bilateral in makeup, and participation will be totally voluntary. Any cost associated with implementing this partnership will be agreed to by the Contractor and the Government, and will be shared equally with no change in Contract price. To implement this partnership initiative, it is anticipated that thirty (30) days after Notice to Proceed, a team building workshop will be conducted. Follow-up workshops will be held periodically throughout the duration of the Contract as agreed to by the Contractor and the Government.

#### 1.9 PROSPECTIVE CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITY

Each bidder shall furnish, within 3 calendar days after receipt of request therefor, data which will show the bidder's ability to perform the work or services required by this Invitation for Bids. Such data shall include as a minimum: Bank certification of financial capability, or a financial statement not over 60 days old, which will be treated as confidential (if over 60 days old, a certificate shall be attached thereto stating that the financial condition is substantially the same or, if not the same, the changes that have taken place); names of commercial and financial reporting agencies from whom credit reports may be obtained; trade creditors; name and address of bonding company; business and construction experience; past record of performance of Government contracts; and construction plant and equipment available for this job, with resume of work in progress or other data that will assure that the bidder is in a position to perform the work within the time specified.

In addition, if the bid exceeds \$1,000,000, the bidder shall furnish upon request, a certified statement listing:

(a) Each contract awarded to him within the preceding three-month period exceeding \$1,000,000 in value with brief description of the contract.

(b) Each contract awarded to him within the preceding three-year period not already physically completed and exceeding \$5,000,000 in value with brief description of the contract.

(c) If the prospective Contractor is a joint venture, each joint venture member will be required to submit the above defined certification. There shall also be furnished any other available information which will serve to substantiate the bidder's qualifications as a responsible prospective Contractor. (KCD APR 84)

#### 1.10 PERFORMANCE OF WORK BY CONTRACTOR

Bidder's attention is directed to SPECIAL CLAUSE titled "Performance of Work by Contractor." The successful bidder will be required to furnish the Contracting Officer, a description of the work which he will perform with his own organization (e.g., earthwork, paving, etc.), the percentage of the total work this represents, and the estimated cost thereof. Such description of work to be performed by the Contractor's own organization shall be furnished to the Contracting Officer within 10 days after award of the contract.

#### 1.11 LABORATORY AND TESTING FACILITIES

The Contractor shall provide and maintain all measuring and testing devices, laboratory equipment, instruments, transportation, and supplies necessary to accomplish the required testing. All measuring and testing devices shall be calibrated at established intervals against certified standards. The Contractor's measuring and testing equipment shall be made available for use by the Government for verification of their accuracy and condition as well as for any inspection or test desired pursuant to the CONTRACT CLAUSE titled "Inspection of Construction." The location of the

laboratory shall be convenient to the site such that test results are available prior to proceeding with the next sequential phase of the work.  
(KCD)

1.12 TIME EXTENSIONS FOR UNUSUALLY SEVERE WEATHER

(a) This provision specifies the procedure for determination of time extensions for unusually severe weather in accordance with the CONTRACT CLAUSE titled "Default: (Fixed Price Construction)." In order for the Contracting Officer to award a time extension under this clause, the following conditions must be satisfied:

(1) The weather experienced at the project site during the contract period must be found to be unusually severe, that is, more severe than the adverse weather anticipated for the project location during any given month.

(2) The unusually severe weather must actually cause a delay to the completion of the project. The delay must be beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor.

(b) The following schedule of monthly anticipated adverse weather delays is based on National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) or similar data for the project location and will constitute the base line for monthly weather time evaluations. The Contractor's progress schedule must reflect these anticipated adverse weather delays in all weather dependent activities.

MONTHLY ANTICIPATED ADVERSE WEATHER DELAY

WORK DAYS BASED ON (5) DAY WORK WEEK

Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec
(9)	(5)	(3)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(4)	(3)	(5)	(3)	(3)	(6)

(c) Upon acknowledgment of the Notice to Proceed (NTP) and continuing throughout the contract, the Contractor will record on the daily CQC report, the occurrence of adverse weather and resultant impact to normally scheduled work. Actual adverse weather delay days must prevent work on critical activities for 50 percent or more of the Contractor's scheduled work day. The number of actual adverse weather delay days shall include days impacted by actual adverse weather (even if adverse weather occurred in previous month), be calculated chronologically from the first to the last day of each month, and be recorded as full days. If the number of actual adverse weather delay days exceeds the number of days anticipated in paragraph b, above, the Contracting Officer will convert any qualifying delays to calendar days, giving full consideration for equivalent fair weather work days, and issue a modification in accordance with the CONTRACT CLAUSE titled "Default (Fixed Price Construction)." (ER 415-1-15)

1.13 REQUIRED INSURANCE SCHEDULE

In accordance with CONTRACT CLAUSE titled "Insurance - Work On A Government Installation," the Contractor shall procure and maintain during the entire

period of his performance under this contract the following minimum insurance.

Type	Amount
Workmen's Compensation State Statute	coverage complying with applicable
Employers' Liability	minimum amount of \$100,000.00
General Liability on Comprehensive Form of Policy	minimum limits of \$500,000 per occurrence for bodily injury which includes, but is not limited to, insurance for all work required herein
Comprehensive Automobile Liability	minimum limits of \$200,000 per person and \$500,000 per occurrence for bodily injury, and \$20,000 per occurrence for property damage

#### 1.14 CONTRACTOR-FURNISHED EQUIPMENT DATA

At or before 30 days prior to final inspection and acceptance of the work, the Contractor shall submit the data mentioned in the following subclauses.

(1) Equipment List. An itemized equipment list showing unit retail value and nameplate data including serial number, model number, size, manufacturer, etc., for all Contractor-furnished items of mechanical equipment, electrical equipment, and fire protection systems installed under this contract.

(2) Guarantees. A list of all equipment items which are specified to be guaranteed accompanied by a copy of each specific guarantee therefor. For each specific guaranteed item, a name, address, and telephone number shall be shown on the list for subcontractor who installed equipment, equipment supplier or distributor and equipment manufacturer. The completion date of the guarantee period shall correspond to the applicable specification requirements for each guaranteed item.

(3) Warranty Service Calls. The Contractor shall furnish to the Contracting Officer the names of local service representatives and/or Contractors that are available for warranty service calls and who will respond to a call within the time periods as follows: 4 hours for heating, air-conditioning, refrigeration, air supply and distribution, and critical electrical service systems and food service equipment, and 24 hours for all other systems. The names, addresses, and telephone numbers for day, night, weekend, and holiday service responses shall be furnished to the Contracting Officer and also posted at a conspicuous location in each mechanical and electrical room or close to the unit.

#### 1.15 DATE OF SAFETY AND HEALTH REQUIREMENTS MANUAL (EM 385-1-1)

(a) The date of the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Safety and Health

Requirements Manual in effect on the date of this solicitation is 3 September 1996. See Section 00700, Contract Clause titled "Accident Prevention."

(b) Section 06.I of EM 385-1-1 is deleted. Job hazard analysis for confined space entry procedures is still required, as per 01.A.09 of EM 385-1-1. OSHA Standards 29 CFR 1910.146 or 29 CFR 1926 shall apply.

(c) Before initiation of work at the job site, an accident prevention plan, written by the prime contractor for the specific work and hazards of the contract and implementing in detail the pertinent requirements of EM 385-1-1, will be reviewed and found acceptable by designated Government personnel.

#### 1.16 COMPLIANCE WITH OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH ACT (OSHA)

The Contractor shall comply with OSHA standards as well as the most current edition of the Corps of Engineers General Safety Requirements Manual (EM 385-1-1). The OSHA standards are subject to change and such changes may affect the Contractor in his performance under the contract. It is the Contractor's responsibility to know such changes and effective dates of changes.

#### 1.17 CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT OWNERSHIP AND OPERATING EXPENSE SCHEDULE

Whenever a modification or equitable adjustment of contract price is required, the Contractor's cost proposal for equipment ownership and operating expenses shall be as set forth in SPECIAL CLAUSE titled "Equipment Ownership and Operating Expense Schedule." A copy of EP 1110-1-8 "Construction Equipment Ownership and Operating Expense Schedule" dated August 1995 can be ordered from the Government Printing Office (GPO) by calling Telephone No. 202-512-1800.

#### 1.18 SHOP DRAWINGS

The Contractor's attention is directed to clause "Specifications and Drawings for Construction" of the Contract Clauses.

#### 1.19 SUBMITTALS

(a) Submittal Procedures. See Division One SECTION: SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.

(b) Shop Drawings shall be submitted in ample time to secure approval prior to the time the items covered thereby are to be delivered to the site. ENG Form 4025 and 4026 shall be used for the transmittal of shop drawings. Unless otherwise specified, shop drawings shall be submitted not less than 30 days before commencement of fabrication of fabricated items and not less than 15 days before delivery of standard stock manufactured items. Where materials are stock with the manufacturer, catalog data, including specifications and full descriptive matter, may be submitted as shop drawings. When catalog includes nonapplicable data, the applicable data shall be clearly designated and identified by item number, item name, and name of manufacturer. Shop drawings submitted (including initial and final submittals) shall be reproductions on high quality paper with clear and

legible print. Drawings shall generally be bordered a minimum of one inch and trimmed to neat lines and unless otherwise specified, the minimum scale shall be 3/8-inch to the foot. Shop drawings quality will be subject to approval. Each shop drawing, including catalog data, shall be identified with a title block including the name of Contractor, contract number, name and location of project, and name of item of work or structure to which the shop drawing applies. Material fabricated or delivered to the site before approved shop drawings have been returned to the Contractor will be subject to rejection. NO CONSTRUCTION OR INSTALLATION SHALL BE DONE FOR ANY ITEM REQUIRING SHOP DRAWINGS, UNTIL ALL SHOP DRAWINGS FOR THAT ITEM HAVE BEEN APPROVED.

(c) As-Built Shop Drawings: Upon completion of the work under this contract, the Contractor shall furnish five complete sets of prints or one complete set of reproducibles of all shop drawings as finally approved. These drawings shall show all changes and revisions made up to the time the equipment is completed and accepted. The quality of the reproducibles and prints is subject to approval.

(d) As-Built Drawings: The Contractor shall maintain three separate sets of red-lined, full scale, as-built construction drawings marked up to fully indicate as-built conditions. These drawings shall be maintained in a current condition at all times until completion of the work, and shall be available for review by Government personnel at all times. All variations from the contract drawings, for whatever reason, including those occasioned by modifications, optional materials, and the required coordination between trades, shall be indicated. These variations shall be shown in the same general detail utilized in the contract drawings. In addition, the Contractor shall indicate on the As-Built Drawings, the brand-name, description, location, and quantity of any and all materials used which contain asbestos. The Contractor shall also be responsible for updating the Government-furnished CADD files to reflect the current as-built conditions throughout the duration of the project. The updated CADD design files shall be maintained in the Intergraph Microstation format consistent with the graphic standards established in the CADD contract drawings provided by the Government. The Contractor will be provided a copy of the Tri-Service CADD standards to facilitate his efforts in the maintenance of design files. The updated CADD files shall be reviewed by the Government on a monthly basis during the progress payment evaluation. The Contractor shall be prepared to demonstrate the status of the updated CADD files in his on-site office. The as-built utility drawings shall show locations and elevations of all underground new utilities and existing utilities encountered, including dimensions from permanent structures and/or survey locations. The submittal requirements for as-built utility drawings shall be shown as separate activities on the Contractor-prepared network analysis. Upon completion of the work, the marked-up drawings and the updated CADD files shall be furnished to the Contracting Officer on CD. In multiphased construction where portions of a system are to be turned over to the user prior to completion of the project, the marked-up drawings for that portion shall be furnished to the Contracting Officer at that time. (MRD ltr 30 Oct 70 and KCD 8 Apr 91)

(e) CADD Files: The Government will provide to the Contractor, within 30 calendar days after Notice of Award, copies of the CADD computer files of

the contract drawings for the production of as-built drawings. These files will be in Intergraph Microstation format. The Government provides no warranty, expressed or implied, of the CADD computer files. The Contractor shall assume all responsibility to verify the CADD drawing files. The Contractor will not utilize the CADD drawing computer files to resolve dimensional or other discrepancies. The Government will not guarantee the measurable accuracy of the CADD drawing computer files.

(b) Purchase Orders: Each purchase order issued by the Contractor or his subcontractors for materials and equipment to be incorporated into the project, shall be maintained on file at the Contractor's field office for inspection and review by Government representatives. Each purchase order shall (1) be clearly identified with applicable DA contract number, (2) carry an identifying number, (3) be in sufficient detail to identify the material being purchased, (4) indicate a definite delivery date, and (5) display the DMS priority rating. At the option of the Contractor, the copies of the purchase orders may or may not indicate the price of the articles purchased. (MRD Ltr 22 Oct 74)

(f) Color Boards:

1. The Contractor shall submit a minimum of three (3) complete sets of color boards within 120 calendar days of receipt of Notice to Proceed. Construction color boards shall be submitted in a 3-ring notebook binder with all materials securely mounted on rigid 8-1/2 by 11-inch presentation (mat) board, with a maximum spread of 25-1/2 by 33 inches for foldouts, clearly coded regarding location of materials in the facility.
2. An index shall be provided listing pertinent contract specifications and drawings for each sample and any proposed substitutions or variances shall be so designated. The Contractor shall also certify, in writing, that all submittal items technically comply with the project specifications.
3. Color boards shall reflect all actual finish textures, patterns, and colors required for this contract as specified on the Interior Room Finish Schedule, the Exterior Finish Schedule and Interior Finish Materials Legend located in the Contract Drawings, and the sample requirements of the submittal registers. All materials must be labeled with the manufacturer's name, pattern and color reference. Patterned material samples (i.e., carpet) must be of sufficient size to enable evaluation of the pattern. Samples shall be keyed or coded to match any key or code system in the Contract Drawings.
4. The Contractor shall express mail a minimum of three (3) copies of the color boards to the Contracting Officer. The Contracting Officer will forward one copy of the colorboards to CENWK-EC-D for review and concurrence. Concurrence or comments will be provided not later than 45 calendar days after receipt of the submittal. This paragraph does not cover the quality of finishing materials. The quality, physical requirements, and method of installation shall be submitted with the appropriate shop drawings. The Contractor shall not submit any of the above requirements with the color boards. Specific locations where the various materials are required are shown on the drawings.

#### 1.20 SPECIAL REFERENCES

(a) Shop Drawings. Bidder's attention is directed to SPECIAL CLAUSE titled "Shop Drawings." The basic requirements for Shop Drawings are set forth in the CONTRACT CLAUSES and SPECIAL CLAUSES.

(b) Approved Equal. Bidder's attention is directed to SPECIAL CLAUSE titled "Approved Equal."

(c) Payment to Subcontractors. Bidder's attention is directed to SPECIAL CLAUSE titled "Payments to Subcontractors."

#### 1.21 DIFFERENCES IN DRAWINGS

In addition to the provisions of CONTRACT CLAUSE paragraph "Specifications and Drawings for Construction," the structural drawings shall govern in cases where they differ from the architectural drawings.

#### 1.22 DAMAGE TO WORK (1966 MAR OCE)

The responsibility for damage to any part of the permanent work shall be as set forth in the CONTRACT CLAUSE titled "Permits and Responsibilities." However, if, in the judgment of the Contracting Officer, any part of the permanent work performed by the Contractor is damaged by flood or earthquake, which damage is not due to the failure of the Contractor to take reasonable precautions or to exercise sound engineering and construction practices in the conduct of the work, the Contractor will make the repairs as ordered by the Contracting Officer and full compensation for such repairs will be made at the applicable contract unit or lump sum prices as fixed and established in the contract. If, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, there are no contract unit or lump sum prices applicable to any part of such work an equitable adjustment pursuant to CONTRACT CLAUSE titled, "Changes," of the contract, will be made as full compensation for the repairs of that part of the permanent work for which there are no applicable contract unit or lump sum prices. Except as herein provided, damage to all work (including temporary construction), utilities, materials, equipment and plant shall be repaired to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer at the Contractor's expense, regardless of the cause of such damage.

#### 1.23 WORK ADJACENT TO ROADS AND HIGHWAYS

Where the construction work is on or adjacent to, or involves hauling over public or private roads, streets, or highways, all herein referred to as "roads," the said roads shall, except as otherwise specified or directed, be kept open for traffic at all times during the construction period. Further, the Contractor shall, during said construction, provide, erect and maintain warning signs, lanterns or torches or other safety devices and, when necessary, provide flagmen for protection of traffic to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer and local authorities. The Contractor shall keep the right-of-way of the roads free of debris that might be caused to accumulate thereon by his operations, and upon completion of the work, shall clean up the said roads and repair any damage to the roads occasioned by his operations under this contract to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer and local authorities having

jurisdiction. The drainage from the roads shall not be obstructed by the construction work. The Contractor shall be responsible for obtaining and paying for all permits required for operation on all roads.

#### 1.24 APPROVED EQUAL

The drawings and the TECHNICAL PROVISIONS of these specifications may, in some instances, refer to certain items of equipment, material, or article by trade name. References of this type shall not be construed as limiting competition, but shall be regarded as establishing a standard of quality. In this respect, the Contractor's attention is directed to CONTRACT CLAUSE titled "Material and Workmanship."

#### 1.25 SCHEDULE OF WORK

The Contractor's attention is directed to CONTRACT CLAUSE titled "Schedule for Construction Contracts," wherein if, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, the Contractor falls behind the approved schedule, the Contractor shall take steps necessary to improve its progress, including those that may be required by the Contracting Officer.

#### 1.26 UPKEEP OF ROADWAY AREAS WITHIN A MILITARY INSTALLATION WHICH THE CONTRACTOR USES

In addition to the requirements in CONTRACT CLAUSE titled "Operations and Storage Areas," the Contractor shall comply with the following requirements: Where the construction work is on or adjacent to, or involves hauling over public roads, streets, or highways located on a military installation, all herein referred to as "roads," the said roads shall except as otherwise specified or directed, be kept open for traffic at all times during the construction period. The Contractor shall keep the roads including adjacent construction site free of debris including litter, waste construction material, mud etc., that might be caused to accumulate thereon by his operations, and upon completion of the work, shall clean up the said roads and construction site and repair any damage occasioned with his operations under this contract to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer. The drainage from the roads shall not be obstructed by the construction work.

#### 1.27 PROTECTION OF UTILITY LINES

(a) It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to protect all existing utility lines from damage during excavation for utilities systems. Any damage resulting to existing utility systems shall be repaired by the Contractor, to the satisfaction of the contracting officer, at no additional cost to the Government.

(b) All requests for access and/or locations must be made through the Contracting Officer's Representative (COR) or Resident Engineer. The Director of Public Works will work directly with the Resident Engineer to provide timely information to the Contractor.

(c) Not less than 3 or more than 10 workdays prior to the actual day of excavation on each site, the Contractor shall contact Kansas One-Call

System, Inc., Toll Free 1-800-344-7233 and obtain a Kansas Dig-Safe Ticket Number. Immediately after obtaining a Kansas Dig-Safe Number the Contractor shall contact Fort Riley Dig-Safe Coordinator at Public Works, Building 337, Telephone 1-785-239-8187, FAX 1-785-239-8188, and accomplish the items listed below. No exceptions to this policy will be tolerated. The Contractor will be held liable for all costs incurred by various underground utility owners for repairs to damaged underground utilities resulting from failure to comply with this procedure.

- (1) Provide Kansas One-Call System Ticket Number.
- (2) Provide company name, name and telephone number of point of contact.
- (3) Provide a site drawing with measurements from nearest building showing depth and nature of work:
- (4) Mark the area to be dug with white paint.

#### 1.28 MODIFICATIONS PRIOR TO DATE SET FOR OPENING BIDS

The right is reserved, as the interest of the Government may require, to revise or amend the specifications or drawings or both prior to the date set for opening bids. Such revisions and amendments, if any, will be announced by an amendment or amendments to this Invitation for Bids. If the revisions and amendments are of a nature which requires material changes in quantities or prices bid or both, the date set for opening bids may be postponed by such number of days as in the opinion of the issuing officer will enable bidders to revise their bids. In such cases, the amendment will include an announcement of the new date for opening bids. (KCD APR 84)

#### 1.29 EXPEDITING NOTICE TO PROCEED

Notwithstanding the requirements of Block 12 on page 00010-1 of SECTION 00010 and SECTION 00100 paragraph titled "Late Submissions, Modifications, and Withdrawals of Bids," in order to expedite award of contract and issuance of NOTICE TO PROCEED, it is requested that an officer of the company or corporation determined to be the successful bidder shall appear in the office of the Commander, Kansas City District, Corps of Engineers, 757 Federal Building, 601 East 12th Street, Kansas City, Missouri, for signing contract documents. Therefore, upon written acceptance of this bid, mailed or otherwise furnished within 60 calendar days after the date of opening of bids, it is requested that the successful bidder shall within 48 hours after receipt of notification appear in the office of the Commander and execute Notice to Proceed documents, and give performance and payment bonds on Government Standard forms 25 and 25A with good and sufficient surety. It is also requested that the successful bidder furnish insurance certificates required in SPECIAL CLAUSE titled "Required Insurance Schedule" at this time.

#### 1.30 UNEXPECTED HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES

In the event that suspected hazardous substances are revealed during construction activities, all such construction activities in the immediate

area shall be immediately suspended. Hazardous substances for purposes of this specification only, shall be defined as CERCLA hazardous substances, infectious or radioactive wastes, asbestos or oil. The Contractor shall leave the materials undisturbed and shall immediately report the find to the Contracting Officer's Representative (COR) so that proper authorities can be notified. The Contractor shall not resume construction activities in the vicinity of the suspected hazardous substances until written clearance is received from the COR. Identification and removal of any such materials will be conducted in accordance with all Federal, state and local environmental laws and regulations according to the CONTRACT CLAUSE titled "Differing Site Conditions."

#### 1.31 TIMBER DISPOSAL

(a) Any and all hardwood trees, stems and limbs three (3) inches in diameter or greater that must be removed as a result of construction be stockpiled by the Contractor in the area designated, i.e. 2d and K Street, Camp Funston. Excluded from this requirement are cedar, pine and cottonwood trees, stems and limbs.

(b) All cedar, pine and cottonwood trees, stems and limbs; all trees, stems and limbs less than three (3) inches in diameter; and all stumps and roots will be taken to the construction and demolition debris landfill for disposal. This landfill is located in the vicinity of the corner of E and 4th Streets in Camp Whitside.

#### 1.32 FORT RILEY CONSTRUCTION DEMOLITION DEBRIS (C/D) LANDFILL OPERATIONS

The Fort Riley Construction Demolition Debris (CD) landfill is located on Campbell Hill Road approximately one mile north of Camp Funston. There is no charge for using the landfill. Delivery vehicles shall be identified with contractor signs on both sides of the vehicle and must provide the contract number. The CD landfill will have an attendant on duty and be open for normal operations (excluding Federal Holidays) Monday-Friday, 0730-1600. Only construction demolition debris materials will be accepted.

Acceptable materials are posted on a board at the entrance. Asbestos materials deliveries require a call for an appointment 24 hours in advance of delivery. Telephone (785) 761-5002. All transformers and light ballasts shall be turned into Building 339 within the PW maintenance yard on Main Post. Light ballasts shall have all wires cut off. POC is Don Wainwright, telephone (785) 239-3832. Any salvageable items shall be turned in to the Directorate of Environment and Safety (DES) Recycle Center, Building 1980, in Camp Funston. POC is the Solid Waste Program Manager, DES, telephone (785) 239-2860.

#### 1.33 KANSAS SALES AND USE TAX

In accordance with FAR clause 52.229-3, notice is given that the contract price excludes the Kansas sales tax and compensating (use) tax on all sales of tangible personal property and materials purchased by the Contractor or subcontractors for the construction of projects, including repairing or remodeling facilities, for the United States. In accordance with Kan. Stats. Anno., sec. 79-3606(e), the Contracting Officer will obtain from the State and furnish to the Contractor an exemption certificate for this

project for use by the Contractor and subcontractors in the purchase of materials for incorporation in the project and of services. The Contractor and the subcontractors shall furnish the number of such certificate to all suppliers from whom such purchases are made, and the suppliers shall execute invoices covering the same bearing the number of such certificate. Pursuant to a 1977 Amendment to K.S.A., 1976 Supp., 79-3606(e), effective 1 July 1977, the Contractor is required to retain all invoices for a period of five (5) years during which time these invoices are subject to audit by the Kansas Director of Taxation. Upon completion of the project, the Contractor shall complete the Project Completion Certification (Form STD 77, Rev. 6/77) in duplicate returning one copy to the Contracting Officer, and forwarding the other to the Kansas Director of Taxation. (KCD)

#### 1.34 WORKING HOURS

Working hours for this project will be limited to Monday through Friday, 7:30 a.m. to 4:30 p.m., except as follows: Work will not be permitted on weekends and Federal holidays. In unusual circumstances, such as when utility turn-off is required for an extended period of time, authorization for weekend or holiday work may be requested from the Contracting Officer; these instances must be coordinated well in advance, in writing. Likewise, utility turn-off of short duration or work which will disrupt normal operations or traffic flow must be scheduled at least 3 working days in advance and may require schedule changes to ensure that safety is maintained.

#### 1.35 LIMITS OF RIGHT-OF-WAY

Limits of right-of-way within private property shall be established as soon as practicable and at least 30 days prior to commencing work in the immediate vicinity, to allow time for relocation of fences by owners of property adjacent to the location of the work.

#### 1.36 INTERRUPTIONS TO UTILITY SERVICES

A schedule showing the approximate times of interruptions of utility services and roads shall be submitted approximately 30 days in advance of interrupting services to make connections. Where it is necessary to interrupt services to make connections and the period of interruption will last more than 2 hours, the connections shall be performed on Saturday or Sunday, unless otherwise approved by the Contracting Officer. Final arrangements shall be made with the Contracting Officer at least 72 hours in advance of the scheduled times of interruptions.

#### 1.37 COORDINATION BETWEEN CONTRACTORS

(See CONTRACT CLAUSE titled "Other Contracts.") Construction work on another contract is underway concurrently with this Contract. The obligations of the Contractor under this Contract will include jointly planning and scheduling the work, on a cooperative basis, with the other Contractor involved in order to minimize delays and interferences. Alterations to systems installed under the other contract, including connections to sewer, waterlines, and bituminous pavement shown as existing, may not be in place.

## 1.38 PROTECTION OF UTILITY LINES

(a) It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to protect all existing utility lines from damage during excavation for utilities systems. Any damage resulting to existing utility systems shall be repaired by the Contractor, to the satisfaction of the contracting officer, at no additional cost to the Government.

(b) All requests for access and/or locations must be made through the Contracting Officer's Representative (COR) or Resident Engineer. The Director of Public Works will work directly with the Resident Engineer to provide timely information to the Contractor.

(c) Not less than 3 or more than 10 workdays prior to the actual day of excavation on each site, the Contractor shall contact Kansas One-Call System, Inc., Toll Free 1-800-344-7233 and obtain a Kansas Dig-Safe Ticket Number. Immediately after obtaining a Kansas Dig-Safe Number the Contractor shall contact Fort Riley Dig-Safe Coordinator at Public Works, Building 337, Telephone 1-785-239-8187, FAX 1-785-239-8188, and accomplish the items listed below. No exceptions to this policy will be tolerated. The Contractor will be held liable for all costs incurred by various underground utility owners for repairs to damaged underground utilities resulting from failure to comply with this procedure.

- (1) Provide Kansas One-Call System Ticket Number.
- (2) Provide company name, name and telephone number of point of contact.
- (3) Provide a site drawing with measurements from nearest building showing depth and nature of work.
- (4) Mark the area to be dug with white paint.

## 1.39 CLOSEOUT OF CONTRACTS (KCD JULY 1990)

The closing out of various features of the contract shall be done before or on the Government contract construction completion date. The Contractor's specific submittals and items required for closeout include, but are not limited to, Operation and Maintenance Manuals (O&M), training, spare parts, equipment list, guarantees, as-built shop drawings and contract drawings.

The Contractor shall review the contract documents and prepare a plan for closeout no later than 90 days after the notice to proceed date for approval by the Contracting Officer Representative (COR). The closeout plan shall also include the Specification Volume No., specification reference section and building name on each closeout item. A summary of the type of closeout information required for each of the items shall be prepared by the Contractor for the closeout plan. The closeout data base shall be updated as required by the Contracting Officer to ensure adequate

tracking of the items noted.

The following is a general list of the various types of closeout materials and the data required for each. (\* indicates data required on initial submittal)

(a) O&M Manuals:

Descriptions\*, Specification Paragraph\*, Date Due\*, No. Copies Due\*, Date Submit Action Code, Resubmit Date, Approved, Date to User

(b) Training Requirements:

Description\*, Specification Paragraph\*, Length Required\*, Date Scheduled, Plan Submitted, Plan Approved, Date Training Held

(c) Spare Parts Required:

Description\*, Specification Paragraph\*, Quantity Required\*, Date Turned Over to User

(d) Salvaged Material:

Description\*, Specification-Plan Requirement\*, Quantity\*, Turn In Document Received

(e) Government-Furnished Equipment:

Description\*, Specification-Plan Requirement\*, GFCI-GFGI\*, Number Required\*, Date Equipment Data Required\*, Date Equipment Required\*, Turnover Document Provided

(f) Utilities Provided or Relocated by Others:

Description\*, Relocate or Provide\*, Specification-Plan Note\*, Date Required\*

1.40 LARGE VOLUME OF FORT RILEY CONSTRUCTION

Bidders are advised that a number of construction projects will be in progress at Fort Riley during the performance of this contract. Each individual Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating and scheduling the work such that the work shall be accomplished to minimize delays and interference.

1.41 TEXT DELETED

TEXT DELETED

1.42 TEXT DELETED

TEXT DELETED

1.43 CHECKPOINTS

The Contractor shall access the jobsite only through designated checkpoints and shall allow extra time for security clearing. The Contractor-designated checkpoint for material delivery is restricted to the 12th Street Control Point, unless otherwise directed by the Contracting Officer.

The Contractor's employees may access the jobsite through any designated checkpoint.

1.44 AGGREGATE SOURCES (1965 MAY OCE)

a. Concrete aggregates may be furnished from any source designated by the Contractor and approved by the Contracting Officer, subject to the conditions hereinafter stated.

b. Aggregate Sources: Reference the Kansas Department of Transportation, Bureau of Materials and Research, Aggregate Source Report "B" Listing, Class 2 Aggregate, dated June 21, 2002 or later. All aggregates shall be tested for compliance with specified requirements. The Contractor shall be responsible for aggregate testing.

c. After the award of the contract, the Contractor shall designate in writing only one source or combination of sources from which he proposes to furnish aggregates. Laboratory test reports for acceptance testing shall be provided as required by Sections 02714A, 02721A, 02722A, 02741A, 02754A, and 03300 of the Technical Provisions. If an aggregate source is not approved for use by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall submit new sources for approval at no additional cost to the Government.

1.45 SPECIAL SCHEDULING

See phasing notes on Sheet C3.5 Volume 2A for work associated with the construction of the chiller modifications to the existing Dining Facility. All work associated with the construction of the Trooper-Apennines Traffic Roundabout shall be deferred to the spring of 2004 and completed within 90 calendar days after commencement of the site work. See phasing notes on Sheet D-1 Volume 2A for demolition of existing buildings, parking lots and utilities.

Upon completion of the new barracks the Contractor shall allow 90 days for the owner to move before demolition of existing building no's 7044 and 7230. Upon completion of the new Battalion Headquarters the Contractor shall allow 90 days for the owner to move before demolition of existing building no's. 7046, 7047, 7048, 7031 and 7028.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

\* \* \* \* \*

## SECTION 01130

DELIVERIES OR PERFORMANCE  
FOR  
TROOPER-APENNINES TRAFFIC ROUNDABOUT  
01/03

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 DESIGN SCHEDULE AND GENERAL CONTRACT PROCEDURES

After the award of the Contract option the Contractor shall execute the work in accordance with the following: Construction shall not commence until the Government has reviewed and approved the applicable design documents. The Government reviews the Contractor's design documents for compliance with the Contract and conformance with the technical requirements, as defined in the Scope of Work (Attachment to this section). The Contractor is totally and solely responsible for the design, coordination, compatibility, completeness, and compliance with the contract requirements. Prior to start of construction, there will be a meeting to discuss the Contractor's Quality Control Plan for this option. See Section 01451A Contractor Quality Control for details. After notice to proceed with the Contract option, the contractor shall schedule a pre-design conference or use a charette process to start the design to be held at the Corps of Engineers, Fort Riley Area Engineer Office, Building 322 Marshall Drive, Fort Riley, Kansas, or other location designated by the Contracting Officer, to acquaint the Contractor with the general plan of contract administration and requirements under which the design is to proceed.

## 1.1.1 Design Preparation

The design of the Trooper-Apennines Traffic Roundabout shall follow the Scope of Work (See Attachment to this section. The Contractor is responsible for acquiring the services of one or more Licensed Civil Engineers, registered in the State of Kansas, with demonstrated geotechnical engineering and roundabout design engineering expertise (minimum 2 comparable projects), to prepare and stamp the Geotechnical Investigation Report, design plans and Design Analysis (P.E. stamp and signature required).

## 1.1.2 Basis for Design

b. After the Contractor completes the engineering, geo-technical subsurface investigations, and topographic survey, and construction and Traffic Management Plan. Contractor shall submit those designs including soils report, drawings, specifications and design analysis for approval by the Contracting Officer.

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

## 1.2.1 Design Submittals

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES. All design submittals including the 50%, 100%, and 100% Back-Check shall include design of the Trooper-Apennines Traffic Roundabout as follows (See paragraph titled "Design Review Distribution" below):

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

50 Percent Design Submittal; G, RE.

The 50 percent design submittal shall be complete with construction work plan, traffic roundabout designs, site surveys, geo-technical subsurface investigations, site design including plan and profile sheets, cross-sections at every 16m of the road, utilities, relocations of utilities, demolition, site grading, drainage slopes, traffic signage, roadways, etc. The 50% shall be completed within 90 calendar days after the Notice to Proceed and receipt of qualifications (See Scope of Work paragraph 1.2), and include a design analysis with calculations, drawings, and specifications referenced in ER 1110-345-700, Design Analysis, Drawings, and Specifications. The Contractor shall acquire a copy of the ER from the following Army based Web Site:  
<http://www.usace.army.mil/inet/usace-docs/eng-regs/er1110-345-700/toc.htm>.

100 Percent Design Submittal; G, RE.

The 100 percent design submittal shall incorporate all review comments from the 50 percent design review and be completed within 60 calendar days after the Contractor receives the letter of approval of the 50 percent design from the Fort Riley Area Engineer.

100 Percent Back-Check Submittal; G, RE.

The 100 percent back-check design submittal shall be complete within 15 calendar days after the Contractor receives the letter of approval of the 100 percent design from the Fort Riley Area Engineer.

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Construction Drawings, Specifications and Design Analysis; G, RE.

See subparagraph titled "Design Documents" below.

As-Built Drawings; G, RE.

See paragraph titled "As-Built Drawings" below.

SD-07 Certificates

Certification of Compliance; G, RE.

See subparagraph titled "Certification of Compliance" below.

## Verification of Site Conditions; G, RE.

See subparagraph titled "Verification of Site Conditions" below.

### 1.2.2 Additional Submittals

Additional submittals and back check reviews may be required until the Government is assured that all review comments have been satisfactorily addressed. The Government review does not constitute approval or acceptance of any variations from the IFB or acceptance of the Contractor's design unless such variations have been specifically requested in writing and approved by the Contracting Officer. The responsibility for a total design in accordance with the Contract and all applicable laws and regulations shall remain with the Contractor and any interim notice to proceed with construction by the Contracting Officer after the approval of the 50% design submittal will in no way mitigate that responsibility.

### 1.2.3 Design and Reviews

The Government review period for the 50 percent and 100 percent submittals shall be 20 calendar days each. The Government review period for the back check submittal shall be 15 calendar days. The time stated for completion of design for review is incorporated into the overall completion time for the project stated in Section 00800.

### 1.2.4 Review Comments

All review comments shall be managed and documented in electronic format utilizing the internet-based Dr Checks software program, available at website <http://65.204.17.188/projnet/home/version1/index.cfm/> at no cost to the Contractor. The Kansas City District Project Manager, through the Contracting Officer, will coordinate with the Contractor to provide access to the DrChecks system and passwords.

### 1.2.5 Identification of Submittals

Each design submittal shall be appropriately stamped, i.e., "For Review Only". Each sheet of the drawings shall be stamped. The back-check design submittal after the Government review of the 100% completed design shall be stamped "For Back-Check Review Only--100%", accordingly; each sheet of the drawings shall be stamped.

## 1.3 SUBMISSION OF CONSTRUCTION DRAWINGS, SPECIFICATIONS AND DESIGN ANALYSIS

### 1.3.1 Title Blocks

For the final project drawings, the Contractor shall incorporate Government format title blocks on his own sheets.

### 1.3.2 Design Documents

Design documents shall include Construction Drawings, Specifications and Design Analysis for categories such as, but not limited to, architectural,

structural, mechanical, electrical, grading, drainage, paving, and outside utility services in accordance with ER 1110-345-700. If changes to the project specifications are required, or additional specification sections are required, the specifications shall be in sufficient detail to fully describe and demonstrate the quality of materials, the installation and performance of equipment, and the quality of workmanship. Detailing and installation of all equipment and materials shall comply with the manufacturers' recommendations. The design analysis shall be for each discipline of work and shall include all features with the necessary design calculations, tables, methods and sources used in determining equipment and material sizes and capacities, and shall provide sufficient information to support the design.

#### 1.3.3 Review Meetings

All review meetings will be held at the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Area Engineer Office, 322 Marshall Drive, Fort Riley, Kansas or other building at Fort Riley designated by the Contracting Officer.

#### 1.3.4 Certification of Compliance

The Contractor shall certify that all items submitted in the design documents comply with the contract documents. The criteria specified in the IFB are binding contract criteria and in case of any conflict after award of the option between the IFB criteria and Contractor's submittals, the IFB criteria will govern unless there is a written and a signed agreement between the Contracting Officer and the Contractor waiving a specific requirement. This certification shall be included on each sheet of working drawings.

#### 1.3.5 Verification of Site Conditions

The Contractor is solely responsible to verify all existing site conditions including underground utilities which are significant to design and construction of the Trooper-Apennines Traffic Roundabout including field inspections, topographic surveys, utility information, subsurface investigations, testing and Geotechnical Report, researching and obtaining all necessary as-built drawings and reproducing them for his own use as necessary, and discussing status with knowledgeable personnel. The information shall be reflected in the design documents.

#### 1.3.6 Investigation Costs

Topographic surveys and geo-technical subsurface and soils testing information, TEXT DELETED, permits, etc required by the Contractor for design and construction after award of the contract option shall be procured and paid for by the Contractor.

### 1.4 MATERIAL REQUIRED FOR 50 PERCENT DESIGN SUBMITTAL

#### 1.4.1 ER 1110-345-700 Requirements

a. Material submitted for the 50 Percent Design Submittal shall comply with ER 1110-345-700 including all design documents for the

Trooper-Apennines Traffic Roundabout. The 50 Percent Design Submittal shall include drawings, design analysis, proposed changes to contract specifications and any additional specification sections not included in the contract. The design shall use Hard Metric units.

1.4.2 TEXT DELETED

TEXT DELETED

1.4.3 Surveys and Soils Reports

All topographic surveys and subsurface geo-technical investigations including the soils report must be complete with the 50% design submittal.

1.4.4 Site Layouts

Site layouts at 50% design must include road layouts, plan, profile, cross-sections, pavement designs, site grading and drainage, location of all existing utilities including those to be relocated, design layout for street lighting, electrical distribution and traffic signs.

1.4.5 Design Analysis and Calculations

The Design Analysis, including calculations required to support the grading, site drainage, pavement design, sidewalks, utilities, roadway lighting, traffic signage, pre-design meeting notes, etc., designs shall be submitted.

1.4.6 Quality Control Documents

Quality Control documents or certification that the approved QC Plan has been followed shall be submitted.

1.5 MATERIAL REQUIRED FOR 100 PERCENT DESIGN SUBMITTAL

1.5.1 General Requirements

For general requirements, Contractor shall see ER 1110-345-700.

1.5.2 100 Percent Design Submittal Documents

All drawings, including site design, specifications, and Design Analysis calculations at 100% design complete, including certification of compliance with the approved QC Plan, shall be submitted.

1.5.3 Design Analysis

All design and calculations shall be reviewed and stamped by a licensed Professional Traffic Operations Engineer (PTOE). The design analysis shall be a separate bound assembly, in one or more volumes, of all the functional and engineering criteria, 50% meeting notes and comments, design information and calculations applicable to the project design as noted in ER 1110-345-700. The analysis shall be organized in a format appropriate for review, approval and record purposes. The design calculations shall be

presented in a clear and legible form, with all methods and references identified and all assumptions and conclusions explained. Calculations submitted shall include all of those required to support design TEXT DELETED of the Trooper-Apennines Traffic Roundabout. TEXT DELETED The design analysis shall cover each discipline of work and shall include all features. The design analysis shall include complete site designs, design calculations for pavement sections, road layouts, storm drainage electrical distribution, communication lines, street lighting, traffic signage, etc. If applicable, electrical design calculations shall include lighting and load calculations, cathodic protection, lightning protection, secondary power and data distribution systems.

#### 1.5.4 Equipment Schedule

Based on the results of calculations, provide a complete list of the materials and equipment proposed with the manufacturer's published catalogued product installation specifications and roughing-in data. Data shall include the manufacturer's wiring diagrams, installation specifications, ARI certification, and the standard warranty for the equipment.

#### 1.5.5 Specific Design Requirements

##### 1.5.5.1 TEXT DELETED

TEXT DELETED

##### 1.5.5.2 Grading

Information on general site grading, storm drainage and contour lines with an interval of not more than 0.3 -meter shall be provided.

##### 1.5.5.3 Site Grading Plans

Site grading plans and designs of entrance roads and parking including road profiles, pavement cross section and profiles, ditches, drainage structures, etc., shall be provided.

##### 1.5.5.4 Site Demolition Plans

Site demolition plans of existing buildings to be demolished, utilities, and other site appurtenances shall be provided.

#### 1.6 DESIGN REVIEW DISTRIBUTION

##### 1.6.1 Distribution of Documents

a. The Contractor shall transmit the 50 percent, 100 percent, and 100 percent back check submittals to the Government agencies and in the quantities indicated below. All documents shall contain an index of contents. The Contractor shall enclose a letter of transmittal with the contract number of each submittal package indicating the type of submittal (e.g., 50 percent design, 100 percent design, 100 percent back check,

etc.), the project name and number and the date written comments are due at the Office of the Contracting Officer. Provide copies to the following distribution:

Six (6) copies of all transmittals shall be sent to the U.S Army Corps of Engineers, Kansas City District, ATTN: CENWK-PM-MM (Robert Smith), 601 E. 12th Street, 700 Federal Building, Kansas City, Missouri 64106-2896

Three (3) copies to the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Fort Riley Area Engineer Office, ATTN: FMRI (Mike Istas), Building 322 Marshall Drive, Fort Riley, Kansas 66442-6016

Six (6) copies to Fort Riley Public Works, ATTN: AFZN-PW-R (Jon Cranmer), Building 330 Dickman Avenue, Fort Riley, Kansas 66442-6016

All submittals shall be transmitted by overnight express mail. One (1) copy of each submittal includes the following: one copy of the half-size set of drawings, one set of specifications, and one design analysis.

#### 1.6.2 Review Time Extension

If for any reason the Government requires more time than stated for review of submittals, the Contractor will be granted an extension of time equal to the number of calendar days of delay.

#### 1.6.3 Design Review Meetings

Design review meetings at 50% and 100% design shall be held at Fort Riley Area Engineer Office or room at Fort Riley designated by the Contracting Officer not later than 25 days after receipt of submittal.

#### 1.6.4 Meeting Requirements

The Contractor and his representatives involved in the design shall attend the review conferences. Government personnel will present review comments for discussion and resolution. All comments shall be annotated in COE Dr Check's database with comment action agreed on within 10 calendar days from the conference date. Unresolved problems will be resolved by immediate follow-up action at the end of meetings. In addition to the comment actions in Dr Check's the Contractor shall submit copies of a memorandum of the design review meetings, summarizing major decision points and issues, which require resolution and the action office. On receipt of final corrected designs, subsequent to completion of the back check reviews, the Contracting Officer will provide formal Government approval necessary to initiate construction. The Government, however, reserves the right to disapprove design document submittals. In this case, every effort shall be made during follow-up action between the Contractor and the Contracting Officer to resolve conflicts and problems so that design documents can be approved. However, if the final submittal is incomplete or deficient, requiring correction by the Contractor and re-submittal for review beyond; the first back check review, the cost of handling and re-reviewing will be deducted from payment due the Contractor at the rate of \$500 per submittal.

#### 1.6.5 Government Review

The Contractor shall submit complete design documents in the same quantity to the same office described in paragraph titled "Distribution of Documents", for each additional Back check submittal until the Government is satisfied that all review comments have been addressed and resolved. Following government approval of the last back check submittal, the Contractor shall submit 2 copies of the electronic CADD .dgn files within seven (7) calendar days, including four (4) complete sets of full size copies and eight (8) half scale copies of the drawings and twelve (12) copies of the specifications to Fort Riley Area Engineer Office, six (6) complete sets of half size drawings and specifications to the Fort Riley Public Works, and six (6) complete sets of half size drawings and specifications to the Kansas City District Office. The Contractor shall properly sign, stamp or seal the final dated drawings.

#### 1.7 APPROVALS PRIOR TO CONSTRUCTION

Approval of the final plans and specifications shall be obtained from the Contracting Officer prior to the start of construction. However, the Army may approve a design submission for site development, and if found satisfactory, allow the contractor to proceed with earthwork and other elements of site development while final plans and specifications for total work being completed. The responsibility for a totally integrated design in accordance with the contract will remain with the contractor and this interim NOTICE TO PROCEED will in no way mitigate against that responsibility.

#### 1.8 SUBMITTAL REGISTERS

On receipt of approval to start construction, the Contractor shall submit copies of ENG Form 4288, Submittal Register, in accordance with Section 01330: Submittal Procedures, paragraph: Submittal Register.

#### 1.9 DESIGN DRAWINGS

See Section 01100. Provide final As-Built Drawings in CADD using Micro station format. Design criteria and concept design furnished by the Government are intended to serve as minimum standard in the preparation of acceptable working drawings and specifications. Applicable details of these drawings shall be incorporated into the working drawings and specifications without reference to their source. Incorporation by reference only is not acceptable. Plan sheet size preferred is "D" size (24 by 36 inches)(full size). TEXT DELETED Construction drawings shall be provided in both original hard copy and on a CD-ROM compact disk and produced in TEXT DELETED MicroStation TEXT DLETED CADD format.

##### 1.9.1 Cover Sheet

A cover sheet for the drawings shall be provided by the Contractor and the cover sheet shall include, as a minimum, the project number and title, project location, installation map, contract number, and execution year.

##### 1.9.2 Format

Drawings shall be produced in TEXT DELETED MicroStation TEXT DELETED CADD format. TEXT DELETED

#### 1.9.3 CADD Files

CADD files must display as plotted and vice versa (WYSIWYG). Formatting and layering in CADD drawing design files shall be in accordance with the Tri-Service Architectural/Engineering/Construction Computer-Aided Design and Drafting (CADD) standards. Half-scale drawings shall be exact half-scale reproductions of the full-scale drawings.

#### 1.9.4 CADD Design Files

Design files shall be fully compatible with TEXT DELETED MicroStation latest version TEXT DELETED. Plotted files shall provide final deliverable CADD files that display all design file features correctly when plotted on the current Public Works plotters. Currently Public Works plotters are HP 650c plotters. CADD reference files shall be merged when used to create drawings and cover sheets.

#### 1.10 CONFLICTING DOCUMENTS

In cases of conflicts between the IFB and contractor's design, the IFB (Scope of Work, including applicable laws and regulations) shall govern. Other conflicts that arise shall be referred to the Contracting Officer for determination.

#### 1.11 SCHEDULE AFTER AWARD OF CONTRACT

The Contractor shall provide a detailed schedule, which shall include a phasing plan, utility disruptions, demolition/asbestos abatement plan, KDHE permit, erosion control plan, and any other activities that would affect existing construction, on or off the project site.

#### 1.12 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

After the Contractor has completed the applicable project design documents the Contracting Officer will issue to the Contractor a notice to proceed with construction. Prior to commencement of construction a Pre-construction Conference will be held to acquaint the Contractor with the general plan of contract administration and requirements under which the construction operation is to proceed. This conference will also inform the Contractor of the obligations concerning equal opportunity and Federal wage rates reporting system.

#### 1.13 CONTRACT CLOSEOUT

Completion, acceptance, and contract settlement are accomplished when final punch list items (see Contract Clause Inspection of Construction) have been completed and approved, as-built drawings are complete, and warranty provisions and dates are established.

#### 1.14 CRITERIA

The design criteria referenced in this section is intended to serve as a minimum standard for the Contractor to prepare designs. Additional criteria are available to the Contractor at the TECHINFO web site. Technical manuals and other DOD criteria shall not be referenced in the specifications. The project requirements shall be abstracted and incorporated into the specifications. Hard copies will not be provided to the Contractor. Criteria is available electronically at the following web sites:

- a. TECHINFO: <http://w2.hnd.usace.army.mil/techinfo/>
- b. Publications of HQUSACE: <http://www.usace.army.mil/inet/usace-docs/>
- c. Construction Criteria Base: <http://www.ccb.org/html/home.html>  
(use CE0688 for the user identification and the password for access)
- d. Army Regulations and Pamphlets (AR's, AP's):  
<http://books.army.mil/cgi-bin/bookmgr/Shelves>
- e. Standards. The drawing standards used shall comply with the Tri-Service A/E/C CADD Standards. The manual is available at <http://tsc.wes.army.mil>
- f. Specifications: The Contractor shall prepare specifications using Unified Facilities Guide Specifications in SPECSINTACT. If the Contractor needs to prepare specifications for items of work not covered by guide specifications, the format of the new specifications shall match the guide specifications.
- g. Fort Riley Installation Standard Design Guide (contact KCD).

#### 1.15 SITE SURVEY

All topographic survey data needed to complete the design of Trooper-Apennines Traffic Roundabout shall be accomplished by the Contractor (See Encl 2, Survey Requirements at the end of this section.).

##### 1.15.1 Maps

Topographic (including site features), limits of construction and existing utility lines must be adequately described by means of maps. Scale of maps will vary depending on size of the site and intricacy of detail to be shown. TEXT DELETED

##### 1.15.1.1 Benchmarks and Monuments

Sufficient benchmarks and monuments to serve during preparation of the site plan and during actual construction shall be shown.

##### 1.15.1.2 Contours

Shape of the ground by contour lines and by spot elevations at all significant points shall be shown. Contour interval will be .30 meters .

Spot elevations on which contours are based will also be indicated on the map.

#### 1.15.1.3 Elevations

Elevations of streets and curbs by spot elevations at all significant points shall be shown.

#### 1.15.1.4 Existing Facilities

Existing site facilities, such as buildings, utilities, parking areas, roads, walks, fences, and retaining walls shall be shown.

#### 1.15.1.5 Water Courses

Water courses, ponds, etc., and the elevation of high water if possible shall be shown.

#### 1.15.1.6 Rock Outcrops

Rock outcrops by accurate outlines and by enough points of elevation to indicate their shape shall be shown.

#### 1.15.1.7 Existing Trees

Data on existing trees shall be provided, including location, identification by common name, diameter of trunk (four feet above the ground), approximate spread of branches, and average ground elevation at the base of isolated trees six inches or more in caliper, principal trees on property lines, and along margins of woods, the largest and best trees within woods at the rate of not less than 16 per acre, and foliage outlines for edges of woods and for masses of shrubby vegetation.

#### 1.15.1.8 Utility Map

This map will show all utility easements or rights-of-way, location, size and invert elevations of existing sanitary sewers, storm drains or open drainage channels, drain inlets and manholes, location and size of existing water, gas and steam mains and underground conduits, location of existing overhead electric power, street lighting, and telephone lines, including pole locations, location of rail lines and rights-of-way, location of fire alarm call boxes and similar appurtenances.

#### 1.15.1.9 Verification of As-Builts

The AE shall be responsible for verifying as-built information as needed for the design.

#### 1.15.2 TEXT DELETED

TEXT DELETED

#### 1.16 SUBSURFACE INVESTIGATIONS

Borings, testing and field logs are the responsibility of the Contractor. A Pavement Design, completed in strict accordance with the Scope of Work, and based on information developed as a result of the subsurface investigation, is required. Boring logs and basic soils design assumptions shall be placed on the drawings.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

-- End of Section --

**EXTENSION OF DESIGN SCOPE OF WORK:  
FORT RILEY, KANSAS  
TROOPER-APPENNINES TRAFFIC ROUNDABOUT**

1. SCOPE (Options 16 and 17)

Option 16 to the Contract consists of (1) completing the design of the Trooper-Appennines Roundabout; and (2) constructing the project in accordance with the Contract.

Option 17 includes the design and construction activities associated with adding 3 pedestrian underpasses to the Trooper-Appennines Roundabout project.

1.1 Design

The design has been partially completed: A traffic study was conducted and computer simulation modeling was utilized to identify and prepare the concept design. The enclosed "Option 16 Site Plan" (Sheet 1) shows the overall layout including proposed horizontal geometrics. Contract specifications shall apply, however, if determined necessary during design, Contractor may propose changes and develop additional specifications.

Also enclosed are "Option 17 Site Plan" (Sheet 2), "Option 16 Boring Location Plan" (Sheet 3), "Option 16 Typical Sections" (Sheet 4), "Option 16 Pavement Profiles" (Sheet 5), "Option 16 Miscellaneous Details" (Sheet 6), and "Option 16 Conceptual Traffic Plan" (Sheet 7) to be used by the Contractor in completing the Roundabout Design. The successful Contractor will be provided the design files included with this document in MicroStation format.

1.2 Qualification

The lead designer is required to have demonstrated roundabout design experience (responsible charge of a minimum of 2 comparable projects). The engineer responsible for the design of traffic control systems, roadway signing and pavement markings must be a registered Professional Traffic Operations Engineer (PTOE). Prior to commencing design work, the Contractor shall submit for Government approval, documentation of PTOE registration and comparable project design experience, including client references (names and telephone numbers).

2. GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Surveying

Survey requirements are described in Enclosure 2. Exhibits 1 through 8 provide approximate extent and locations of existing utilities in the project area (See Section 1130, par. 1.3.5). Exhibit 9 provides approximate control point locations. Survey control point data (coordinates, elevation, datum shift, etc.) will be provided by the Contracting Officer following Contract award.

## 2.2 Geotechnical Investigation

Contractor shall complete a geotechnical investigation, with minimum requirements being as shown in the "Option 16 Boring Location Plan" (Sheet 3) and in Enclosure 3. The boring locations, depths and lab tests shown are the minimum required. Contractor will be required to coordinate with the Contracting Officer: hours during which drilling is allowed may be limited. Prior to drilling the Contractor shall obtain Environmental Clearance from the Contracting Officer.

## 3. DESIGN COMPLETION

### 3.1 Design Submittals

Design submittals are explained in the Contract (Section 01130). Design guidance is explained in Enclosure 1.

### 3.2 Design Plans

Using the survey, geotechnical report and the documents included with this scope of work, design the pavement section and geometrics (both vertical and horizontal) to complete the Roundabout Design Plans.

### 3.3 Pavement Design Requirements

Pavement design requirements and criteria are listed Enclosure 4. The pavement design will consist of concrete curb and gutter and a minimum of 200 mm of asphalt pavement over a drained granular base (Contractor is required to complete the design analysis for the pavement as part of the design). The horizontal geometrics are provided (curve radii, number of lanes and approximate alignments), but the alignments, which are based on planimetrics, shall be adjusted as needed by the Contractor to fit the survey. Longitudinal grades for the roadways shall be a maximum of 5 percent.

### 3.4 Storm Drainage

The storm drainage on the project shall be accommodated through the use of curb inlets. The pipes from the inlets shall discharge into the existing roadway ditch system.

### 3.5 Sidewalks

The existing sidewalks in the area will be reconnected to the new roadway pavements using wheelchair ramps at the curbs. Sidewalks shall be concrete and shall match existing sidewalk widths and shall be a minimum of 6 inches in depth.

### 3.6 Street Lighting

Street lighting shall be provided and designed in accordance with FHWA Roadway Lighting Manual (use urban collector as a minimum design requirement). Street light units will be placed at all roadway project crosswalks. Existing street lights shall be salvaged and delivered to an on-post location designated by the Contracting Officer.

### 3.7 Landscaping

Landscaping shall at a minimum restore all areas disturbed by construction to a grass covered condition. The contractor shall provide whatever measures are necessary to prevent erosion.

### 3.8 Permitting

The contractor is referred to the Contract Specifications for all permit requirements.

### 3.9 Utility Relocations

Any utility relocations required by the final design shall be designed by the Contractor and relocated by the Contractor as part of this project.

### 3.10 Traffic Management

Traffic Management is a critical aspect of this project. A Traffic Management Plan shall be submitted for Government approval. Overnight closures (1900 to 0500) will be allowed, but access across Trooper Drive shall be provided at all times. Daytime traffic restrictions will be allowed (0500 to 1900), however, road closures will not be allowed 0500 to 1900 hours. During the peak traffic times (0530 to 0630, 0715 to 0815, 1130 to 1230 and 1630 to 1730), only limited traffic restrictions will be allowed. A flagman may be used during off-peak times.

Contractor may elect to construction a temporary detour road around the south side of the PX as shown on Sheets 1 and 2. The temporary detour road shall be at least 7.315 meters wide with 3 meter wide unpaved shoulders. The minimum pavement section for this detour road will be least 100 mm of asphalt concrete over 150 mm of graded crushed aggregate base course. This road will require a culvert, sized to pass the 10-year storm, in the existing drainage ditch. Drainage calculations developed for culvert sizing must be included in the Design Analysis Report. Contractors may leave the detour road in place at the conclusion of the project.

### 3.11 Signal Removal

The existing traffic signals at the Apennines-Warren Drive intersection will be removed (salvaged) and delivered to an on-post location designated by the Contracting Officer.

### 3.12 Traffic Signing

A Traffic Signing plan shall be completed by the Contractor for review and approval by the Government. The traffic signs shown on the attached plan sheets are for informational purposes only and may not be representative of the required traffic signs for the roadway project. Prior to submittal of the 50 percent design plans, the traffic signing plan shall be coordinated with the Contracting Officer. All traffic signs used on this project shall be Standard size signs or larger and comply with the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD).

Yield and stop signs shall be placed at the approaches shown in Sheet 7.

"Keep Right" signs (MUTCD R4-7) shall be placed at median noses that separate traffic entering and exiting the circulating roadway (separating head to head traffic).

"Wrong Way" signs (MUTCD R5-1a) shall be placed on the circulating roadway upstream from entry points. The signs will also be placed on entry and exit roads that vehicles could incorrectly turn onto. At each location, the signs will be placed on both sides of the roadway. "Do Not Enter" signs (MUTCD R5-1) may be used in place of the wrong way signs at the direction of the Contractor's design engineer and with the approval of the Contracting Officer.

A "One Way" sign (MUTCD R6-1) will be placed across from the Warren Drive entry point to indicate the direction of flow on the circulating roadway.

Street name signs shall be placed at each intersection. Way finding signs shall be placed along the circulating roadway and on adjacent roads as needed to clearly identify downstream roadway connections.

### 3.13 Pavement Markings

All pavement markings shall be thermoplastic. Pavement markings shall comply with the MUTCD.

A Pavement Marking plan shall be completed by the Contractor for review and approval by the Government. The pavement markings shown on Sheets 1, 2 and 3 are for information only and may not be representative of the required markings for the roadway project. Prior to submittal of the 50 percent design plans, the pavement marking plan shall be coordinated with the Contracting Officer. Pavement Markings for areas shown as "const. by others" on Sheets 1 and 7 shall be included in this project.

Turn arrows shall be placed on exclusive turn lanes and exclusive lanes shall include "only" markings. Turn arrow and "only" markings shall be placed in advance of and at intersections. Spacing shall be coordinated with the Contracting Officer. Shared through/turn lanes shall be marked with shared through/turn lane arrows in advance of and at intersections. Median approaches will require markings as described in section 3.15. Stop bar markings shall be installed at each stop sign location. Arrows shall be placed on the circulating roadway to indicate direction of travel upstream of entry points to communicate direction of flow to the drivers.

### 3.14 Crosswalks

Required crosswalk locations are shown on the “Option 16 Site Plan (Sheet 1)”. Details of the crosswalk markings are shown on the “Option 16 Miscellaneous Details” (Sheet 6). Crosswalk markings shall be thermoplastic.

### 3.15 Medians

All median islands shown on the “Option 16 Site Plan” (Sheet 1) shall be raised islands with 6 inch curb unless otherwise noted. The median islands shown in black shall be paved with a minimum of 6 inches of concrete unless otherwise noted.

All island noses facing approaching traffic shall have a paved ramp nose similar to the detail shown on “Option 16 Miscellaneous Details” (Sheet 6). The ramp portion of these noses shall be covered with yellow thermoplastic.

### 3.16 Trooper-Desert Storm Intersection

The limits of construction are shown on Sheet 1. The south, east and west legs of the intersection will be constructed by others, however, pavement markings will exceed the limits of construction, as shown.

Traffic control shall consist of stop signs on Desert Storm Drive (eastbound and westbound approaches) along with time-of-day restricted turning movements described as follows: During peak traffic periods as defined by the Contracting Officer, left-turns will be restricted on Trooper Drive (northbound and southbound approaches) and the left-turn and through movements on Desert Storm Drive (eastbound and westbound approaches) will be restricted. These lane movement restrictions shall be communicated to motorists using both conventional ground mount signs in advance of the intersection and with overhead fiber optic or LED signs. As part of this contract, traffic signal pole assemblies and equipment at the Trooper-Apennines intersection shall be relocated to the Trooper-Desert Storm intersection and shall provide timer-activated lane control signage. Any equipment not needed for the Trooper-Desert Storm installation will be salvaged and delivered to a location designated by the Contracting Officer. The fiber optic or LED signs will be mounted over and centered on the lanes being restricted.

The Trooper Drive signs will display a no left-turn diagram (MUTCD R3-2) when that movement is restricted. The arrow will be white with the circle/slash red. The Desert Storm signs will be similar to the Trooper Drive signs except they will show shared through-left arrows instead of a left-turn arrow. They will be on only when the movements are restricted. The signs will be off or blank at all other times of the day. The advanced conventional signs will show the restricted movements and include a placard noting the times of day the restrictions are in place. Specifications for and design of the signal control installation will be completed by the Contractor and provided to the Government for review and approval.

#### 4. OPTION 17

##### 4.1 Pedestrian Underpass

Option 17 consists of designing and constructing three pedestrian underpasses and the associated connecting sidewalks, stairs and ramps together with the necessary drainage, grading and security/safety lighting. TEXT DELETED

##### 4.2 Geotechnical Investigation

The Contractor shall incorporate into the geotechnical investigation, required for Option 16, three additional borings, one each at the locations of the Pedestrian Underpasses as described in Enclosure 3.

##### 4.3 Design Plans

The general layout of the three pedestrian underpasses and the sidewalk/stair/ramp access system is shown on the enclosed "Option 17 Site Plan" (Sheet 2). The design shall endeavor to layout the sidewalks, grading and underpass structure locations in such a manner that the majority (if not all) of the areas are visible from the surrounding roadways and/or parking areas. The minimum design for the sidewalks in this option shall be 4 feet wide and 6 inches thick concrete. Through the underpasses the sidewalks shall be 6 foot wide. The sidewalks shall have a maximum grade of 5 percent. Where it is necessary to exceed 5 percent, due to space limitations, the sidewalk shall be classified as a ramp and be designed to handicapped standards (ADA).

The underpasses shall have minimum clearances of 6 foot wide and 8 foot high. The underpasses shall have minimum cover of 2 feet in roadway and sidewalk areas and 1 foot in landscape areas. All lighting associated with the pedestrian underpasses shall have TEXT DELETED fixtures suitable for wet locations with guarded, shatterproof lenses. All exposed surfaces of the underpasses shall be covered with a material to provide a graffiti-resistant surface. Guardrail shall be provided on both sides of the roads at the pedestrian underpass locations.

END

**ENCLOSURE 1: DESIGN GUIDANCE**

**1. SCOPE.** The Design Requirements include all the requirements for the location and layout of a construction project.

**2. PURPOSE**

**3. REFERENCES.**

TECHINFO: [Techinfo Home Page](http://www.hnd.usace.army.mil/techinfo/)  
<http://www.hnd.usace.army.mil/techinfo/>

Publications of HQUSACE:  
<http://www.usace.army.mil/inet/usace-docs/>

**4. PLANS REQUIRED.** Any or all of the following plans may be required to show the complete design requirements:

4.1 Concept Plans.

Typical Pavement Sections

Site Plan

Pavement Profiles

4.2 Final Plans.

Typical Pavement Sections

Site Plan

Removal Plan

Pavement Profiles

Erosion Control Plan

Utility Plan

Grading and Storm Drainage Plan

Miscellaneous Details

## 5. DESCRIPTION OF PLANS.

5.1 Typical Pavement Sections. Required typical pavement sections showing the various lane configurations and pavement design components.

5.2 Site Plan. The Site Layout Plan shall show all the site design and layout information necessary to field locate the drives, walks, roads, and all other appurtenances to be constructed on the project. The information shall be complete to the extent that dimensions or coordinates will locate every constructed item above and below the ground. Site Plans shall be a scale of 1:250 metric. The Site Plan, prior to adding the dimensions, should serve as the base sheet to provide reproducible drawings for the Utilities Plan, and the Grading and Drainage Plan. The Site Plan shall show all existing physical features and utilities within and adjacent to the work site that will remain after the proposed construction has been completed. Whenever the Site Plan occupies more than one sheet of drawings, a Key Plan shall be included. Landscaping shall be shown on the Site Plan. Landscaping shall show or designate the limits of seeding and/or sodding (all unsurfaced ground areas disturbed by construction within the project limits shall be seeded and/or sodded).

5.3 Removal Plan. The removal plan will show the existing physical condition of the site before construction. The physical features usually include field survey information such as the above and below ground utilities; buildings, drives, roads and parking areas, walks, trees and tree sizes, shrubs, and other vegetation; and such facilities as retaining walls, etc. Each physical feature to be removed shall be as indicated on the standard legend sheet and properly noted to be removed, to remain, or to be relocated.

5.4 Erosion Control Plan. An erosion control plan and specification shall be prepared by the Contractor showing berms and dikes, retention or detention ponds, silt fences

and temporary seeded areas if determined to be necessary for the specific project.

5.5 Site Grading and Storm Drain Plan. The site grading and storm drain plan shall be at a scale of 1:250, using the basic site plan layout (without siting notes and dimensions) showing the following:

Existing utilities to remain.

Existing grading contours.

Uniform grades shall be labeled using slope arrows.

Proposed new culverts, storm drains, and subdrains with tentative sizes.

Location of borings.

5.6 Pavement Profiles. Pavement profiles for all new roads and streets, with vertical curve information. Profiles shall show all underground utilities existing and new.

## **6. SURVEY REQUIREMENTS.**

6.1 A Field Survey for the design of the project shall be furnished TEXT DELETED by the A-E as directed by the scope of work. The Survey requirements are as follows:

### **6.2 Contractor furnished Surveys.**

6.2.1 General. The Contractor shall perform all engineering and topographic surveys for this project. TEXT DELETED Electronic drawings and data shall be furnished in a Micro-Station compatible format. Meta Data shall be provided as required by EM 1110-1-2909. See Enclosure 2 for additional survey requirements and information.

## **7. WASTE AND BORROW AREAS.**

7.1 See the Project Specifications for Waste and Borrow Area availability and requirements.

## **8. CONTRACTOR'S STAGING AREA AND PARKING.**

8.1 Show areas for Contractor storage, temporary fencing, sheds, and parking for subcontractors and their employees if this information is available during design.

## **9. WORK BY OTHERS .**

9.1 Any work, be it construction, relocation, and/or removal, shown on the drawings, which is not existing but to be performed by others shall be identified on the Site Plan, Site Preparation, Utilities and/or Grading and Drainage Plans as "N.I.C." (For "Not in Contract"). Note on each drawing that there is information on the drawings for work, which is not in the contract.

**10. FINAL DESIGN.** In general, the final design documents must include sufficient information for construction of the project. Specific requirements for plans, are given below.

10.1 Drawings. Generally, the corrected concept plans may be used as the basis for the final plans; however, all details necessary to complete construction must be included. The following information is required in addition to the previously stated requirements for concept plans.

New grading contours shall be provided on the site grading plan.

Profiles of all new storm drains, subdrains, and culverts showing new and existing grades, pipe diameters and lengths, pipe slopes, invert elevations, top of grade elevations, top of man hole elevations, etc. Class and gage of all storm drain pipes should be provided.

Details of all storm drain and subdrain structures.

Storm drain and subdrain structure schedules.

Traffic Signing and Striping Details.

A grading plan with finished contours and a plan and profile with complete horizontal and vertical curve data. Plan and profile drawing shall also show existing contours for bidding earthwork quantities.

**11. GRADING.** Positive drainage shall be provided for all areas and existing drainage ways shall be utilized to the extent possible. Required excavation and embankment quantities shall be balanced to the extent possible without compromising the design. Ice on walks should be a safety consideration for all areas.

11.1 Design Criteria.

Department of the Army and Air Force Technical Manuals.

TM 5-822-2 - General Provisions and Geometric Design for Roads, Streets,  
88-7, Chap 5 - Walks, Open Storage Areas (July 87)

Handicapped Standards.

Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards (1984)

11.2 Additional Criteria Limits.

11.2.1 Gutter Grades:

Desirable minimum of 0.8 percent.

Absolute minimum of 0.5 percent.

11.2.2 Longitudinal Walk Grades:

Maximum of 5 percent.

11.2.3 Overlot Grades:

Minimum 1 percent for cohesionless sandy soils.

Minimum 2 percent for cohesive soils or turfed areas.

Minimum grade of 0.3 percent for channelized flow.

**12. DRAINAGE.**

12.1 Design Criteria.

12.1.1 Department of the Army and Air Force Technical Manuals.

TM 5-820-1 - Surface Drainage Facilities for Airfields and Heliports (Aug 87)  
88-5, Chap 1

TM 5-820-4 - Drainage for Areas Other Than Airfields (Oct 83)  
88-5, Chap 4

12.1.2 Department of the Army Technical Manuals.

TM 5-820-3 - Drainage and Erosion Control, Structures for Airfields and Heliports (Jan 78)

12.1.3 Engineer Manuals.

EM 1110-2-2902 - Conduits, Culverts, and Pipes (Mar 69)

12.2 Storm Run-off. Determination of storm run-off shall be in accordance with the method presented in TM 5-820-1/AFM 88-5, Chapter 1 or TM 5-820-4/AFM 88-5, Chapter 4. Sizing of storm drainage systems for developed portions of military installations such as administrative, industrial, and housing areas as well as roadway culverts shall be based on rainfall of 10-year frequency. Protection of military installations against flood flow originating from areas exterior to the installation will normally be based on 25-year or greater rainfall, depending on operational requirements, cost-benefit considerations, and nature and consequences of flood damage resulting from the failure of protective works.

12.3 Storm Drainage System Layout. The storm drainage system shall be designed so as to minimize the number of drainage structures required. Structures shall be located at all changes in direction of storm drain line, at the intersection of two or more storm drain lines, and where required to intercept rainfall runoff. The distance between drainage structures will be not more than approximately 100m for conduits with a minimum dimension smaller than 760mm. Storm drain lines shall be located outside of paved areas to the extent possible. Curb inlets shall be spaced along two-lane roads so that the width of flooded areas does not exceed half the lane width. Where storm drain pipes are of different diameters, the pipe crowns shall be matched at the centerline of drainage structures.

**13. TRAFFIC SIGNAGE DESIGN CRITERIA.** Traffic signage shall be provided for all new roads. The Contractor shall address

traffic signage with the facility user. American National Standards Institute (ANSI) Standards:

D6. 1-1988 - Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways.

## UTILITY RELOCATIONS

**1. SCOPE.** Items covered in this section include water supply and distribution systems, outside fire protection, sanitary sewage systems.

### **2. REFERENCES.**

TECHINFO: [Techinfo Home Page](http://www.hnd.usace.army.mil/techinfo/)  
<http://www.hnd.usace.army.mil/techinfo/>

### **3. PRELIMINARY DESIGN.**

3.1 Drawings. Drawings shall contain, as a minimum, the following:

Using the basic site plan layout show the following:

3.1.1 All Existing Utilities.

3.1.2 Water Supply, Sewer, Gas, Power, and Communication lines (Relocations)

Develop separate layout sheet showing:

Proposed routing and tentative sizes.

Existing utilities and aboveground features, which could affect construction.

Show proposed locations for manholes, relief valves, blowoffs, isolation valves, etc.

Proposed valves (including PIVs), lift station and manhole locations.

Proposed fire hydrant locations.

Lighting

**4. FINAL DESIGN.** In general, the final design documents must include sufficient information for construction of the project. Specific requirements for plans and design analysis are given below.

4.1 Drawings. Generally, the corrected and approved concept plans may be used as the basis for the final plans; however, all details necessary for complete construction must be included. The following information is required in addition to the previously stated requirements for concept plans.

4.1.1 Water Distribution , Sewage Collection Systems and Gas Distribution (Relocations)

Profiles of all gravity sewers, waterlines and sewage force mains. Profiles may be omitted for short waterlines unless necessary to assure adequate cover or avoid interference with other underground facilities.

Indicate existing pipe material where new lines connect. Indicate type of connection and elevation.

Location of all valves, fire hydrants and similar appurtenances.

Appropriate water and sewer details.

For pavement cuts, show type of pavement to be removed and replaced.

4.1.2 Water Supply Lines, Outfall Sewers, Long Force Mains.

Include survey ties and/or bearings.

Include stationing in both plan and profile.

**ENCLOSURE 4: PAVEMENT DESIGN REQUIREMENTS**

Pavement Design Analysis: A flexible pavement section shall be designed and detailed using criteria presented in TM 5-822-5, Pavement Design for Roads, Streets, Walks, and Open Storage Areas. The pavement should be designed for seasonal frost conditions in accordance with TM 5-822-5 Chapter 18 using "Reduced Subgrade Strength" method.

In no case shall the asphaltic concrete portion of the pavement section be less than 200 mm (8").

## PRELIMINARY PAVEMENT DESIGN

Fort Riley, KS Trooper-Apennines Traffic Roundabout  
Preliminary Pavement Design

By : John Raleigh (HDR Engineering)

Design considerations : Ft Riley is in an area where frost design criteria are applicable in accordance with TM 5-822-5. Lime-modification of pavement subgrade soils is required to reduce moisture sensitivity of the plastic soils and reduce expansive soil characteristics. Lime modified subgrade provides a stable working platform for subsequent construction. The construction activity related to the use of lime-modified subgrade may contribute to subgrade uniformity as required in TM 5-822-5 paragraph 18-17. In order to be considered for use in satisfying part of the frost design section requirements, lime-modified subgrade soils should be evaluated for freeze-thaw durability in accordance with paragraph 18-14b. Lime-modified subgrade soil mix design should conform to TM 5-822-4. These requirements were not used in previous phases of the Ft Riley Barracks Renewal projects. To remain consistent with the previous phases of the project the lime-modified subgrade will not be used to satisfy pavement section requirements, but will be incorporated into the pavement section being built.

Traffic based on the Fort Riley Traffic Study Trooper Drive dated January 2003.

Traffic Evaluation:

Group 1	=	9200
Group 2	=	1380
Group 3	=	<u>920</u>
		11,500

Type terrain: Rolling  
 Pavement Type: Street  
 Category IV (TM 5-822-5, paragraph 3-2,a.).  
 DHV = 1380 (based on 12 percent of the effective ADT).  
 Class A (TM 5-822-2, Table 1-2).  
 Design Index, D I = 5 (TM 5-822-5, Table 3-1).

Design Conditions:  
 Normal period subgrade design CBR = 5 (based on previous evaluation).  
 Subgrade soil, Frost Design Soil Classification = F3-F4 (TM 5-822-5, Table 18-2).  
 The Frost - Area Soil Support Index = 3.5 (TM 5-822-5, Table 18-3).  
 Base Course = 80 CBR (TM 5-822-5, paragraph 6-4)  
 Pavement Drainage Layer thickness: H=100 mm (ETL 1110-3-435).  
 Pavement Separation Layer thickness: H=100 mm (ETL 1110-3-435).

The normal period design section thickness is 470 mm based on a subgrade design CBR = 5 (TM 5-822-5, Table 8-1). The frost design section thickness by the Reduced Strength (RSS) Method is 584 mm (TM 5-822-5, paragraph 18-7.a.).

The minimum pavement and base course design requirement is 63.5 mm of asphalt concrete pavement on 100 mm of 80 CBR aggregate base course. (TM 5-822-5, Table 6-1).

On previous projects at Ft. Riley Trooper Drive pavement sections used a 50 mm asphalt concrete (AC) surface course on a 75 mm asphalt concrete intermediate course with drainage and separation layers. Ft. Riley DPW has used 200 mm AC over a drainage layer on Apenniness Drive repairs and requested we use this design section. Equivalency factors for the use of asphalt stabilized soil layers is 2.3 to 1. (TM 5-822-5, Table 8-1).

The minimum design section (RSS Method):

63.5 mm asphalt concrete (AC) surface course  
100 mm graded crushed aggregate base course (GCA)  
100 mm graded aggregate drainage layer  
100 mm graded aggregate separation layer  
220 mm graded aggregate subbase course  
150 mm Lime-Modified subgrade

Using the equivalency factors for stabilized layers, the minimum design AC pavement for Ft. Riley Trooper - Apennines Traffic Roundabout is 200 mm AC. Subtracting the minimum required thickness of 63.5 mm AC results in 136.5 mm AC more than the minimum requirement.  $136.5 \text{ mm} \times 2.3$  equivalency factor = 314 mm of sub base. Therefore, using 200 mm of AC surface and intermediate course would reduce the required sub base course from 220 mm to a negative 94 mm.

The minimum pavement design section required (RSS Method);

50 mm asphalt concrete (AC) surface course  
150 mm AC intermediate course (minimum 2 Lifts)  
100 mm graded crushed aggregate base course (GCA)  
100 mm graded aggregate drainage layer  
100 mm graded aggregate separation layer  
150 mm Lime- Modified Subgrade

## SECTION 03300

CAST-IN-PLACE STRUCTURAL CONCRETE  
11/01

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## ACI INTERNATIONAL (ACI)

ACI 117/117R	(1990; Errata) Standard Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials
ACI 211.1	(1991) Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight, and Mass Concrete
ACI 214.3R	(1988; R 1997) Simplified Version of the Recommended Practice for Evaluation of Strength Test Results of Concrete
ACI 301	(1999) Standard Specifications for Structural Concrete
ACI 303R	(1991) Guide to Cast-In-Place Architectural Concrete Practice
ACI 305R	(1999) Hot Weather Concreting
ACI 318/318R	(1999) Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS  
(AASHTO)

AASHTO M 182	(1991; R 1996) Burlap Cloth Made from Jute or Kenaf
--------------	---

## AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS (ASTM)

ASTM C 31/C 31M	(2000e1) Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field
ASTM C 33	(1999ae1) Concrete Aggregates

ASTM C 39/C 39M	(2001) Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens
ASTM C 42/C 42M	(1999) Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete
ASTM C 94/C 94M	(2000e2) Ready-Mixed Concrete
ASTM C 123	(1998) Lightweight Particles in Aggregate
ASTM C 131	(1996) Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
ASTM C 136	(1996a) Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C 143/C 143M	(2000) Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM C 150	(1999a) Portland Cement
ASTM C 171	(1997a) Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete
ASTM C 172	(1999) Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete
ASTM C 173	(1994ael) Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method
ASTM C 192/C 192M	(2000) Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Laboratory
ASTM C 231	(1997el) Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
ASTM C 260	(2000) Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C 309	(1998a) Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
ASTM C 494/C 494M	(1999ael) Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C 496	(1996) Splitting Tensile Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens
ASTM C 578	(1995) Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
ASTM C 591	(1994) Unfaced Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation
ASTM C 618	(2000) Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined

Natural Pozzolan for Use as a Mineral  
Admixture in Concrete

ASTM C 685	(2000) Concrete Made by Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing
ASTM C 937	(1997) Grout Fluidifier for Preplaced-Aggregate Concrete
ASTM C 940	(1998a) Expansion and Bleeding of Freshly Mixed Grouts for Preplaced-Aggregate Concrete in the Laboratory
ASTM C 979	(1999) Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete
ASTM C 989	(1999) Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag for Use in Concrete and Mortars
ASTM C 1017/C 1017M	(1998) Chemical Admixtures for Use in Producing Flowing Concrete
ASTM C 1064/C 1064M	(1999) Temperature of Freshly Mixed Portland Cement Concrete
ASTM C 1077	(1998) Laboratories Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Laboratory Evaluation
ASTM C 1107	(1999) Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink)
ASTM C 1260	(1994) Potential Alkali Reactivity of Aggregates (Mortar-Bar Method)
ASTM D 75	(1987; R 1997) Sampling Aggregates
ASTM E 96	(2000) Water Vapor Transmission of Materials

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)

NIST HB 44	(1997) NIST Handbook 44: Specifications, Tolerances, and other Technical Requirements for Weighing and Measuring Devices
------------	---

NATIONAL READY-MIXED CONCRETE ASSOCIATION (NRMCA)

NRMCA CPMB 100	(1996) Concrete Plant Standards \n/c\$\X
----------------	--

NRMCA QC 3 (1984) Quality Control Manual: Section 3,  
Plant Certifications Checklist:  
Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete  
Production Facilities

NRMCA TMMB 100 (1994) Truck Mixer Agitator and Front  
Discharge Concrete Carrier Standards

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

COE CRD-C 104 (1980) Method of Calculation of the  
Fineness Modulus of Aggregate

COE CRD-C 400 (1963) Requirements for Water for Use in  
Mixing or Curing Concrete

COE CRD-C 521 (1981) Standard Test Method for Frequency  
and Amplitude of Vibrators for Concrete

COE CRD-C 94 (1995) Surface Retarders

1.2 NOT USED 1.3 LUMP SUM CONTRACT

Under this type of contract concrete items will be paid for by lump sum and will not be measured. The work covered by these items consists of furnishing all concrete materials, reinforcement, miscellaneous embedded materials, and equipment, and performing all labor for the forming, manufacture, transporting, placing, finishing, curing, and protection of concrete in these structures.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Mixture Proportions; G, GL

The results of trial mixture design studies along with a statement giving the maximum nominal coarse aggregate size and the proportions of ingredients that will be used in the manufacture of each strength or class of concrete, at least 30 days prior to commencing concrete placing operations. Aggregate weights shall be based on the saturated surface dry condition. The statement shall be accompanied by test results from an approved independent commercial testing laboratory, showing that mixture design studies have been made with materials proposed for the project and that the proportions selected will produce concrete of the qualities

indicated. No substitutions shall be made in the materials used in the mixture design studies without additional tests to show that the quality of the concrete is satisfactory.

#### SD-04 Samples

Surface Retarder; , RE

Sample of surface retarder material with manufacturer's instructions for application in conjunction with air-water cutting.

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Testing and Inspection for Contractor Quality Control; G, RE

Certified copies of laboratory test reports, including mill tests and all other test data, for portland cement, blended cement, pozzolan, ground granulated blast furnace slag, aggregate, admixtures, and curing compound proposed for use on this project.

#### SD-07 Certificates

Qualifications; , RE

Written documentation for Contractor Quality Control personnel.

### 1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

Contractor Quality Control personnel assigned to concrete construction shall be American Concrete Institute (ACI) Certified Workmen in one of the following grades or shall have written evidence of having completed similar qualification programs:

Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade I  
Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade I or II  
Concrete Construction Inspector, Level II

Concrete Transportation Construction Inspector or  
Reinforced Concrete Special Inspector, Jointly certified by American Concrete Institute (ACI), Building Official and Code Administrators International (BOCA), International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO), and Southern Building Code Congress International (SBCCI).

The foreman or lead journeyman of the flatwork finishing crew shall have similar qualification for ACI Concrete Flatwork Technician/Finisher or equal, with written documentation.

### 1.6 FIELD TEST PANELS

Field test panels shall be constructed prior to beginning of work using the materials and procedures proposed for use on the job, to demonstrate the results to be attained. The quality and appearance of each panel shall be subject to the approval of the Contracting Officer, and, if not judged

satisfactory, additional panels shall be constructed until approval is attained. Formed or finished surfaces in the completed structure shall match the quality and appearance of the approved field example.

1.6.1 Slab Panels

At least 6 test panels shall be constructed at least 920 mm by 920 mm and 100 mm thick shall be constructed to demonstrate color range and variation for pigmented concrete mixtures. Panels shall be located on site. The mix proportions and batch weights for each panel shall be reported. Pigmented concrete shall conform to the requirements for concrete specified herein. The Contracting Officer shall inspect and determine which panel and pigmented concrete mixture shall be used in the work. If the sample panels do not show the range, shades, and variations in color in which to base a determination on, the Contractor shall provide additional sample panels at no additional cost to the Government. The sample panel shall be retained on site for future comparisons with concrete placements in the work. The contractor shall protect and store the sample panel in an approved location until the completion of all pigmented concrete placements.

1.7 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

A pre-installation meeting with the Contracting Officer will be required at least 10 days prior to start of construction. The Contractor shall be responsible for calling the meeting; the Project Superintendent and active installation personnel shall be present.

1.8 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1.8.1 Tolerances

Except as otherwise specified herein, tolerances for concrete batching, mixture properties, and construction as well as definition of terms and application practices shall be in accordance with ACI 117/117R. Level and grade tolerance measurements of slabs shall be made as soon as possible after finishing; when forms or shoring are used, the measurements shall be made prior to removal.

1.8.1.1 Floors

For the purpose of this Section the following terminology correlation between ACI 117/117R and this Section shall apply:

Floor Profile Quality Classification From ACI 117/117R -----	This Section -----
Conventional Bullfloated	Same
Conventional Straightedged	Same
Flat	Float Finish or Trowel Finish

Levelness tolerance shall not apply where design requires floors to be sloped to drains or sloped for other reasons.

- 1.8.1.2 NOT USED
- 1.8.1.3 Floors by the Straightedge System

The flatness of the floors shall be carefully controlled and the tolerances shall be measured by the straightedge system as specified in paragraph 4.5.7 of ACI 117/117R, using a 3 m straightedge, within 72 hours after floor slab installation and before shores and/or forms are removed. The listed tolerances shall be met at any and every location at which the straightedge can be placed.

Bullfloated 12.7mm  
 Straightedged 8.0mm  
 Float Finish 4.8mm  
 Trowel Finish 4.8

#### 1.8.2 Strength Requirements and w/c Ratio

##### 1.8.2.1 Strength Requirements

Specified compressive strength ( $f'c$ ) shall be as follows:

COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH	STRUCTURE OR PORTION OF STRUCTURE
27.6 MPa at 28 days	All work

Concrete made with high-early strength cement shall have a 7-day strength equal to the specified 28-day strength for concrete made with Type I or II portland cement. Compressive strength shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C 39/C 39M.

- a. Evaluation of Concrete Compressive Strength. Compressive strength specimens (152 by 305 mm cylinders) shall be fabricated by the Contractor and laboratory cured in accordance with ASTM C 31/C 31M and tested in accordance with ASTM C 39/C 39M. The strength of the concrete will be considered satisfactory so long as the average of all sets of three consecutive test results equals or exceeds the specified compressive strength  $f'c$  and no individual test result falls below the specified strength  $f'c$  by more than 3.5 MPa. A "test" is defined as the average of two companion cylinders, or if only one cylinder is tested, the results of the single cylinder test. Additional analysis or testing, including taking cores and/or load tests may be required at the Contractor's expense when the strength of the concrete in the structure is considered potentially deficient.
- b. Investigation of Low-Strength Compressive Test Results. When any strength test of standard-cured test cylinders falls below the specified strength requirement by more than 3.5 MPa or if tests of field-cured cylinders indicate deficiencies in protection and curing, steps shall be taken to assure that the load-carrying capacity of the structure is not jeopardized. When the strength

of concrete in place is considered potentially deficient, cores shall be obtained and tested in accordance with ASTM C 42/C 42M. At least three representative cores shall be taken from each member or area of concrete in place that is considered potentially deficient. The location of cores will be determined by the Contracting Officer to least impair the strength of the structure.

Concrete in the area represented by the core testing will be considered adequate if the average strength of the cores is equal to at least 85 percent of the specified strength requirement and if no single core is less than 75 percent of the specified strength requirement. Non-destructive tests (tests other than test cylinders or cores) shall not be used as a basis for acceptance or rejection. The Contractor shall perform the coring and repair the holes. Cores will be tested by the Government.

- c. Load Tests. If the core tests are inconclusive or impractical to obtain or if structural analysis does not confirm the safety of the structure, load tests may be directed by the Contracting Officer in accordance with the requirements of ACI 318/318R. Concrete work evaluated by structural analysis or by results of a load test as being understrength shall be corrected in a manner satisfactory to the Contracting Officer. All investigations, testing, load tests, and correction of deficiencies shall be performed by and at the expense of the Contractor and must be approved by the Contracting Officer, except that if all concrete is found to be in compliance with the drawings and specifications, the cost of investigations, testing, and load tests will be at the expense of the Government.

1.8.2.2 Water-Cement Ratio

Maximum water-cement ratio (w/c) for normal weight concrete shall be as follows:

WATER-CEMENT RATIO, BY WEIGHT	STRUCTURE OR PORTION OF STRUCTURE
0.45	All Work

These w/c's may cause higher strengths than that required above for compressive strength. The maximum w/c required will be the equivalent w/c as determined by conversion from the weight ratio of water to cement plus pozzolan and ground granulated blast furnace slag (GGBF slag) by the weight equivalency method as described in ACI 211.1. In the case where GGBF slag is used, the weight of the GGBF slag shall be included in the equations of ACI 211.1 for the term P which is used to denote the weight of pozzolan. The water content of all admixtures used in the mix shall be reported and included in the w/c ratio determination for the mixture.

1.8.3 Air Entrainment

All concrete shall be air entrained to contain between 4.5 and 7.5 percent total air content. Specified air content shall be attained at point of placement into the forms. Air content shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C 231. Pigmented concrete shall be air entrained and

conform to the requirements for concrete specified herein.

#### 1.8.4 Slump

Slump of the concrete, as delivered to the point of placement into the forms, shall be within the following limits. Slump shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C 143/C 143M.

Structural Element	Slump	
	Minimum	Maximum
Walls and beams	50 mm	100 mm
Foundation walls, substructure walls, footings, slabs	25 mm	75 mm
Any structural concrete approved for placement by pumping:		
At pump	50 mm	150 mm
At discharge of line	25 mm	100 mm

When use of a plasticizing admixture conforming to ASTM C 1017/C 1017M or when a Type F or G high range water reducing admixture conforming to ASTM C 494/C 494M is permitted to increase the slump of concrete, concrete shall have a slump of 50 to 100 mm before the admixture is added and a maximum slump of 200 mm at the point of delivery after the admixture is added.

#### 1.8.5 Concrete Temperature

The temperature of the concrete as delivered shall not exceed 32 degrees C.

When the ambient temperature during placing is 5 degrees C or less, or is expected to be at any time within 6 hours after placing, the temperature of the concrete as delivered shall be between 12 and 25 degrees C.

#### 1.8.6 Size of Coarse Aggregate

The largest feasible nominal maximum size aggregate (NMSA) specified in paragraph AGGREGATES shall be used in each placement. However, nominal maximum size of aggregate shall not exceed any of the following: three-fourths of the minimum cover for reinforcing bars, three-fourths of the minimum clear spacing between reinforcing bars, one-fifth of the narrowest dimension between sides of forms, or one-third of the thickness of slabs.

#### 1.8.7 Special Properties and Products

Concrete may contain admixtures other than air entraining agents, such as water reducers, superplasticizers, set retarding agents, or pigmenting admixtures to provide special properties to the concrete, if specified or approved. Any of these materials to be used on the project shall be used in the mix design studies.

## 1.8.8 NOT USED

## 1.8.9 Technical Service for Specialized Concrete

The Contractor shall be responsible for providing the on site technical service for specialized concrete. The use of pigmented concrete in the work may require more stringent batching and handling controls in order to obtain the required product. The Contracting Officer, may require the Contractor to provide the on site services of the pigmenting admixture manufacturer's technical representative. The services of the factory trained technical representative shall be obtained to oversee proportioning, batching, mixing, placing, consolidating, and finishing of pigmented concrete. The technical representative shall be on the job site until the Contracting Officer is satisfied that field controls indicate concrete of specified quality is furnished and that the Contractor's crews are capable of continued satisfactory work. The technical representative shall be available for consultation with, and advice to, Government forces.

## 1.9 MIXTURE PROPORTIONS

Concrete shall be composed of portland cement, other cementitious and pozzolanic materials as specified, aggregates, water and admixtures as specified.

## 1.9.1 Proportioning Studies for Normal Weight Concrete

Trial design batches, mixture proportioning studies, and testing requirements for various classes and types of concrete specified shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Mixture proportions shall be based on compressive strength as determined by test specimens fabricated in accordance with ASTM C 192/C 192M and tested in accordance with ASTM C 39/C 39M. Samples of all materials used in mixture proportioning studies shall be representative of those proposed for use in the project and shall be accompanied by the manufacturer's or producer's test reports indicating compliance with these specifications. Trial mixtures having proportions, consistencies, and air content suitable for the work shall be made based on methodology described in ACI 211.1, using at least three different water-cement ratios for each type of mixture, which will produce a range of strength encompassing those required for each class and type of concrete required on the project. The maximum water-cement ratios required in subparagraph Water-Cement Ratio will be the equivalent water-cement ratio as determined by conversion from the weight ratio of water to cement plus pozzolan and ground granulated blast furnace slag (GGBF slag) by the weight equivalency method as described in ACI 211.1. In the case where GGBF slag is used, the weight GGBF slag shall be included in the equations in ACI 211.1 for the term P, which is used to denote the weight of pozzolan. If pozzolan is used in the concrete mixture, the minimum pozzolan content shall be 15 percent by weight of the total cementitious material, and the maximum shall be 35 percent. Laboratory trial mixtures shall be designed for maximum permitted slump and air content. Separate sets of trial mixture studies shall be made for each combination of cementitious materials and each combination of admixtures proposed for use. No combination of either shall be used until proven by such studies, except that, if approved in writing and otherwise permitted by these

specifications, an accelerator or a retarder may be used without separate trial mixture study. Separate trial mixture studies shall also be made for concrete for any conveying or placing method proposed which requires special properties and for concrete to be placed in unusually difficult placing locations. The temperature of concrete in each trial batch shall be reported. For each water-cement ratio, at least three test cylinders for each test age shall be made and cured in accordance with ASTM C 192/C 192M. They shall be tested at 7 and 28 days in accordance with ASTM C 39/C 39M. From these test results, a curve shall be plotted showing the relationship between water-cement ratio and strength for each set of trial mix studies. In addition, a curve shall be plotted showing the relationship between 7 day and 28 day strengths. Each mixture shall be designed to promote easy and suitable concrete placement, consolidation and finishing, and to prevent segregation and excessive bleeding.

1.9.2 NOT USED

1.9.3 NOT USED

#### 1.9.4 Average Compressive Strength Required for Mixtures

The mixture proportions selected during mixture design studies shall produce a required average compressive strength ( $f'_{cr}$ ) exceeding the specified compressive strength ( $f'_c$ ) by the amount indicated below. This required average compressive strength,  $f'_{cr}$ , will not be a required acceptance criteria during concrete production. However, whenever the daily average compressive strength at 28 days drops below  $f'_{cr}$  during concrete production, or daily average 7-day strength drops below a strength correlated with the 28-day  $f'_{cr}$ , the mixture shall be adjusted, as approved, to bring the daily average back up to  $f'_{cr}$ . During production, the required  $f'_{cr}$  shall be adjusted, as appropriate, based on the standard deviation being attained on the job.

##### 1.9.4.1 Computations from Test Records

Where a concrete production facility has test records, a standard deviation shall be established in accordance with the applicable provisions of ACI 214.3R. Test records from which a standard deviation is calculated shall represent materials, quality control procedures, and conditions similar to those expected; shall represent concrete produced to meet a specified strength or strengths ( $f'_c$ ) within 7 MPa of that specified for proposed work; and shall consist of at least 30 consecutive tests. A strength test shall be the average of the strengths of two cylinders made from the same sample of concrete and tested at 28 days. Required average compressive strength  $f'_{cr}$  used as the basis for selection of concrete proportions shall be the larger of the equations that follow using the standard deviation as determined above:

$$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 1.34S \text{ where units are in MPa}$$

$$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 2.33S - 3.45 \text{ where units are in MPa}$$

Where  $S$  = standard deviation

Where a concrete production facility does not have test records meeting the requirements above but does have a record based on 15 to 29 consecutive tests, a standard deviation shall be established as the product of the calculated standard deviation and a modification factor from the following table:

NUMBER OF TESTS	MODIFICATION FACTOR FOR STANDARD DEVIATION
15	1.16
20	1.08
25	1.03
30 or more	1.00

#### 1.9.4.2 Computations without Previous Test Records

When a concrete production facility does not have sufficient field strength test records for calculation of the standard deviation, the required average strength  $f'_{cr}$  shall be determined as follows:

- a. If the specified compressive strength  $f'_c$  is less than 20 MPa,

$$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 6.9 \text{ MPa}$$

- b. If the specified compressive strength  $f'_c$  is 20 to 35 MPa,

$$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 8.3 \text{ MPa}$$

- c. If the specified compressive strength  $f'_c$  is over 35 MPa,

$$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 9.7 \text{ MPa}$$

1.9.5 NOT USED

1.9.6 NOT USED

#### 1.10 STORAGE OF MATERIALS

Cement and other cementitious materials shall be stored in weathertight buildings, bins, or silos which will exclude moisture and contaminants and keep each material completely separated. Aggregate stockpiles shall be arranged and used in a manner to avoid excessive segregation and to prevent contamination with other materials or with other sizes of aggregates. Aggregate shall not be stored directly on ground unless a sacrificial layer is left undisturbed. Reinforcing bars and accessories shall be stored above the ground on platforms, skids or other supports. Other materials shall be stored in such a manner as to avoid contamination and deterioration. Admixtures which have been in storage at the project site for longer than 6 months or which have been subjected to freezing shall not be used unless retested and proven to meet the specified requirements. Materials shall be capable of being accurately identified after bundles or containers are opened.

## 1.11 GOVERNMENT ASSURANCE INSPECTION AND TESTING

Day-to day inspection and testing shall be the responsibility of the Contractor Quality Control (CQC) staff. However, representatives of the Contracting Officer can and will inspect construction as considered appropriate and will monitor operations of the Contractor's CQC staff. Government inspection or testing will not relieve the Contractor of any of his CQC responsibilities.

### 1.11.1 Materials

The Government will sample and test aggregates, cementitious materials, other materials, and concrete to determine compliance with the specifications as considered appropriate. The Contractor shall provide facilities and labor as may be necessary for procurement of representative test samples. Samples of aggregates will be obtained at the point of batching in accordance with ASTM D 75. Other materials will be sampled from storage at the jobsite or from other locations as considered appropriate. Samples may be placed in storage for later testing when appropriate.

### 1.11.2 Fresh Concrete

Fresh concrete will be sampled as delivered in accordance with ASTM C 172 and tested in accordance with these specifications, as considered necessary.

### 1.11.3 Hardened Concrete

Tests on hardened concrete will be performed by the Government when such tests are considered necessary.

### 1.11.4 Inspection

Concrete operations may be tested and inspected by the Government as the project progresses. Failure to detect defective work or material will not prevent rejection later when a defect is discovered nor will it obligate the Government for final acceptance.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CEMENTITIOUS MATERIALS

Cementitious Materials shall be portland cement, portland-pozzolan cement, or portland cement in combination with pozzolan or ground granulated blast furnace slag and shall conform to appropriate specifications listed below. Use of cementitious materials in concrete which will have surfaces exposed in the completed structure shall be restricted so there is no change in color, source, or type of cementitious material.

#### 2.1.1 Portland Cement

ASTM C 150, Type I or II, conforming to the low alkali requirement. White portland cement shall meet the above requirements except that it may be Type I, Type II or Type III, conforming to the low alkali requirement.

White Type III shall be used only in specific areas of the structure, when approved in writing.

#### 2.1.2 High-Early-Strength Portland Cement

ASTM C 150, Type III with tricalcium aluminate limited to 5 percent, and conforming to the low alkali requirement. Type III cement shall be used only in isolated instances and only when approved in writing.

#### 2.1.3 Blended Cements

ASTM C 595M , Type IP, meeting the mortar expansion limits.

#### 2.1.4 Pozzolan (Fly Ash)

ASTM C 618, Class C or F with the optional requirements for multiple factor, drying shrinkage, and uniformity from Table 2A of ASTM C 618. Requirement for maximum alkalis from Table 1A of ASTM C 618 shall apply. Loss on ignition shall not exceed 3 percent. Fly Ash, when used to mitigate alkali-aggregate reactivity, shall be Class F and have a Calcium Oxide (CaO) content of less than 8 percent. If pozzolan is used, it shall never be less than 15 percent nor more than 35 percent by weight of the total cementitious material. The Contractor shall comply with EPA requirements in accordance with Section 01670 RECYCLED / RECOVERED MATERIALS.

#### 2.1.5 Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace (GGBF) Slag

ASTM C 989, Grade 120.

#### 2.1.6 NOT USED

#### 2.2 AGGREGATES

Fine and coarse aggregates proposed for use in all concrete shall be evaluated and tested by the Contractor for alkali-aggregate reactivity in accordance with ASTM C 1260. Test results shall have a measured expansion "DELETED TEXT" of less than 0.1 percent at 16 days after casting. Should the test data indicate an expansion "DELETED TEXT" of 0.1 percent or more, the aggregate(s) shall be rejected or the proposed cement replaced and the aggregates retested with the replacement cement. Aggregates shall conform to the following.

##### 2.2.1 Fine Aggregate

Fine aggregate shall consist of natural sand, manufactured sand, or a combination of the two, and shall be composed of clean, hard, durable particles. Fine aggregate shall conform to the quality and gradation requirements of ASTM C 33. Fine aggregate as delivered to the mixer shall not contain more than 0.1 percent lignite. Total lightweight aggregate particles, including coal and lignite, in natural sand shall be less than 0.25 percent as determined in accordance with ASTM C 123.

##### 2.2.2 Coarse Aggregate

Coarse aggregate shall consist of crushed or uncrushed gravel, crushed stone, or a combination thereof. Coarse aggregate shall be sound and durable free of objectionable coatings. The nominal maximum size of the coarse aggregate shall be 19.0 mm. Coarse aggregate shall conform to ASTM C 33, Class 5S, except that loss on abrasion shall be less than 40 percent.

In addition, coarse aggregate shall not contain more than 0.5 percent by weight of white tripolitic chert that has a specific gravity, saturated surface dry, of less than 2.40 as determined in accordance with ASTM C 123.

Tripolitic chert is the white porous siliceous form of weathered chert found in nodules and beds within some limestones. The total amount of all types of chert shall not exceed 3 percent by weight.

2.2.3 NOT USED

2.2.4 NOT USED

2.3 CHEMICAL ADMIXTURES

Chemical admixtures, when required or permitted, shall conform to the appropriate specification listed. Admixtures shall be furnished in liquid form and of suitable concentration for easy, accurate control of dispensing.

Admixtures proposed for use in pigmented concrete shall conform to the pigment manufacturer's requirements. The pigment admixture manufacturer's requirements for other admixtures shall be submitted with the mix design.

2.3.1 Air-Entraining Admixture

ASTM C 260 and shall consistently entrain the air content in the specified ranges under field conditions.

2.3.2 Accelerating Admixture

ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C or E, except that calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride shall not be used.

2.3.3 Water-Reducing or Retarding Admixture

ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A, B, or D, except that the 6-month and 1-year compressive and flexural strength tests are waived.

2.3.4 High-Range Water Reducer

ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F or G, except that the 6-month and 1-year strength requirements are waived. The admixture shall be used only when approved in writing, such approval being contingent upon particular mixture control as described in the Contractor's Quality Control Plan and upon performance of separate mixture design studies.

2.3.5 Surface Retarder

COE CRD-C 94.

2.3.6 Expanding Admixture

Aluminum powder type expanding admixture conforming to ASTM C 937.

### 2.3.7 Pigmenting Admixture

Pigmenting admixture used in producing colored concrete shall conform to ASTM C 979, and shall be L.M. Scofield, Chromix, #C-27 Westwood Brown. Pigmented concrete shall only be used where specifically indicated or directed.

### 2.3.8 Other Chemical Admixtures

Chemical admixtures for use in producing flowing concrete shall comply with ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type I or II. These admixtures shall be used only when approved in writing, such approval being contingent upon particular mixture control as described in the Contractor's Quality Control Plan and upon performance of separate mixture design studies.

## 2.4 CURING MATERIALS

Curing materials for pigmented concrete shall conform to the manufacturer's requirements, except as otherwise directed. Curing materials for all other concrete shall conform to the following requirements.

### 2.4.1 Impervious-Sheet

Impervious-sheet materials shall conform to ASTM C 171, type optional, except, that polyethylene sheet shall not be used.

### 2.4.2 Membrane-Forming Compound

Membrane-Forming curing compound shall conform to ASTM C 309, Type 1-D or 2, except that only a styrene acrylate or chlorinated rubber compound meeting Class B requirements shall be used for surfaces that are to be painted or are to receive bituminous roofing, or waterproofing, or floors that are to receive adhesive applications of resilient flooring. The curing compound selected shall be compatible with any subsequent paint, roofing, waterproofing, or flooring specified. Nonpigmented compound shall contain a fugitive dye, and shall have the reflective requirements in ASTM C 309 waived.

### 2.4.3 Burlap and Cotton Mat

Burlap and cotton mat used for curing shall conform to AASHTO M 182.

## 2.5 WATER

Water for mixing and curing shall be fresh, clean, potable, and free of injurious amounts of oil, acid, salt, or alkali, except that non-potable water may be used if it meets the requirements of COE CRD-C 400.

## 2.6 NONSHRINK GROUT

Nonshrink grout shall conform to ASTM C 1107, Grade A, B, or C, and shall be a commercial formulation suitable for the proposed application.

## 2.7 NOT USED 2.8 NOT USED 2.9 NOT USED 2.10 EMBEDDED ITEMS

Embedded items shall be of the size and type indicated or as needed for the application. Dovetail slots shall be galvanized steel. Inserts for shelf angles and bolt hangers shall be of malleable iron or cast or wrought steel.

#### 2.11 FLOOR HARDENER

Floor hardener shall be a colorless aqueous solution containing zinc silicofluoride, magnesium silicofluoride, or sodium silicofluoride. These silicofluorides can be used individually or in combination. Proprietary hardeners may be used if approved in writing by the Contracting Officer.

#### 2.12 PERIMETER INSULATION

Perimeter insulation shall be polystyrene conforming to ASTM C 578, Type II or polyurethane conforming to ASTM C 591, Type II. The Contractor shall comply with EPA requirements in accordance with Section 01670 RECYCLED / RECOVERED MATERIALS.

#### 2.13 VAPOR BARRIER

Vapor barrier shall be polyethylene sheeting with a minimum thickness of 0.15 mm (6 mils) or other equivalent material having a vapor permeance rating not exceeding 30 nanograms per Pascal per second per square meter (0.5 perms) as determined in accordance with ASTM E 96.

#### 2.14 JOINT MATERIALS

##### 2.14.1 Sealant

Sealants shall be in accordance with Specification Section 03150 CONSTRUCTION JOINTS.

##### 2.15 NOT USED

##### 2.16 NOT USED

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION FOR PLACING

Before commencing concrete placement, the following shall be performed. Surfaces to receive concrete shall be clean and free from frost, ice, mud, and water. Forms shall be in place, cleaned, coated, and adequately supported, in accordance with Specification Section 03100 STRUCTURAL CONCRETE FORMWORK. Reinforcing steel shall be in place, cleaned, tied, and adequately supported, in accordance with Specification Section 03200 CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT. Transporting and conveying equipment shall be in-place, ready for use, clean, and free of hardened concrete and foreign material. Equipment for consolidating concrete shall be at the placing site and in proper working order. Equipment and material for curing and for protecting concrete from weather or mechanical damage shall be at the placing site, in proper working condition and in sufficient amount for the entire placement. When hot, windy conditions during concreting appear

probable, equipment and material shall be at the placing site to provide windbreaks, shading, fogging, or other action to prevent plastic shrinkage cracking or other damaging drying of the concrete.

### 3.1.1 Foundations

#### 3.1.1.1 Concrete on Earth Foundations

Earth (subgrade, base, or subbase courses) surfaces upon which concrete is to be placed shall be clean, damp, and free from debris, frost, ice, and standing or running water. Prior to placement of concrete, the foundation shall be well drained and shall be satisfactorily graded and uniformly compacted.

#### 3.1.1.2 NOT USED

#### 3.1.1.3 Excavated Surfaces in Lieu of Forms

Concrete for footings may be placed directly against the soil provided the earth has been carefully trimmed, is uniform and stable, and meets the compaction requirements of Specification Section 02315: EXCAVATION, FILLING, AND BACKFILLING FOR BUILDINGS. The concrete shall be placed without becoming contaminated by loose material, and the outline of the concrete shall be within the specified tolerances.

### 3.1.2 Previously Placed Concrete

#### 3.1.2.1 [Enter Appropriate Subpart Title Here]

#### 3.1.2.2 Preparation of Previously Placed Concrete

Concrete surfaces to which other concrete is to be bonded shall be abraded in an approved manner that will expose sound aggregate uniformly without damaging the concrete. Laitance and loose particles shall be removed. Surfaces shall be thoroughly washed and shall be moist but without free water when concrete is placed.

### 3.1.3 Vapor Barrier

Vapor barrier shall be provided as indicated on the contract drawings. The greatest widths and lengths practicable shall be used to eliminate joints wherever possible. Joints shall be lapped a minimum of 300 mm. Torn, punctured, or damaged vapor barrier material shall be removed and new vapor barrier shall be provided prior to placing concrete. For minor repairs, patches may be made using laps of at least 300 mm. Lapped joints shall be sealed and edges patched with pressure-sensitive adhesive or tape not less than 50 mm wide and compatible with the membrane.

### 3.1.4 Perimeter Insulation

Perimeter insulation shall be installed at locations indicated. Adhesive shall be used where insulation is applied to the interior surface of foundation walls and may be used for exterior application.

### 3.1.5 Embedded Items

Before placement of concrete, care shall be taken to determine that all embedded items are firmly and securely fastened in place as indicated on the drawings, or required. Conduit and other embedded items shall be clean and free of oil and other foreign matter such as loose coatings or rust, paint, and scale. The embedding of wood in concrete will be permitted only when specifically authorized or directed. Voids in sleeves, inserts, and anchor slots shall be filled temporarily with readily removable materials to prevent the entry of concrete into voids. Welding shall not be performed on embedded metals within 300 mm of the surface of the concrete. Tack welding shall not be performed on or to embedded items.

### 3.2 CONCRETE PRODUCTION

#### 3.2.1 Batching, Mixing, and Transporting Concrete

Ready-mixed concrete shall be batched, mixed, and transported in accordance with ASTM C 94/C 94M, except as otherwise specified. Truck mixers, agitators, and nonagitating transporting units shall comply with NRMCA TMMB 100. Ready-mix plant equipment and facilities shall be certified in accordance with NRMCA QC 3. Approved batch tickets shall be furnished for each load of ready-mixed concrete. Site-mixed concrete may be used for production of pigmented (colored) concrete. Batching, mixing and placing of pigmented concrete shall conform to the admixture manufacturer's recommendations, except as otherwise directed.

##### 3.2.1.1 General

The batching plant shall be located off site close to the project. The batching, mixing and placing system shall have a capacity of at least 50 cubic meters per hour. The batching plant shall conform to the requirements of NRMCA CPMB 100 and as specified; however, rating plates attached to batch plant equipment are not required.

##### 3.2.1.2 Batching Equipment

The batching controls shall be semiautomatic or automatic, as defined in NRMCA CPMB 100. A semiautomatic batching system shall be provided with interlocks such that the discharge device cannot be actuated until the indicated material is within the applicable tolerance. The batching system shall be equipped with accurate recorder or recorders that meet the requirements of NRMCA CPMB 100. The weight of water and admixtures shall be recorded if batched by weight. Separate bins or compartments shall be provided for each size group of aggregate and type of cementitious material, to prevent intermingling at any time. Aggregates shall be weighed either in separate weigh batchers with individual scales or, provided the smallest size is batched first, cumulatively in one weigh batcher on one scale. Aggregate shall not be weighed in the same batcher with cementitious material. If both portland cement and other cementitious material are used, they may be batched cumulatively, provided that the portland cement is batched first. Water may be measured by weight or volume. Water shall not be weighed or measured cumulatively with another ingredient. Filling and discharging valves for the water metering or batching system shall be so interlocked that the discharge valve cannot be opened before the filling valve is fully closed. Piping for water and for

admixtures shall be free from leaks and shall be properly valved to prevent backflow or siphoning. Admixtures shall be furnished as a liquid of suitable concentration for easy control of dispensing. An adjustable, accurate, mechanical device for measuring and dispensing each admixture shall be provided. Each admixture dispenser shall be interlocked with the batching and discharging operation of the water so that each admixture is separately batched and individually discharged automatically in a manner to obtain uniform distribution throughout the water as it is added to the batch in the specified mixing period. Different admixtures shall not be combined prior to introduction in water and shall not be allowed to intermingle until in contact with the cement. Admixture dispensers shall have suitable devices to detect and indicate flow during dispensing or have a means for visual observation. The plant shall be arranged so as to facilitate the inspection of all operations at all times. Suitable facilities shall be provided for obtaining representative samples of aggregates from each bin or compartment, and for sampling and calibrating the dispensing of cementitious material, water, and admixtures. Filling ports for cementitious materials bins or silos shall be clearly marked with a permanent sign stating the contents.

#### 3.2.1.3 Scales

The weighing equipment shall conform to the applicable requirements of CPMB Concrete Plant Standard, and of NIST HB 44, except that the accuracy shall be plus or minus 0.2 percent of scale capacity. The Contractor shall provide standard test weights and any other auxiliary equipment required for checking the operating performance of each scale or other measuring devices. The tests shall be made at the specified frequency in the presence of a Government inspector. The weighing equipment shall be arranged so that the plant operator can conveniently observe all dials or indicators.

#### 3.2.1.4 Batching Tolerances

##### (A) Tolerances with Weighing Equipment

MATERIAL	PERCENT OF REQUIRED WEIGHT
Cementitious materials	0 to plus 2
Aggregate	plus or minus 2
Water	plus or minus 1
Chemical admixture	0 to plus 6

##### (B) Tolerances with Volumetric Equipment

For volumetric batching equipment used for water and admixtures, the following tolerances shall apply to the required volume of material being batched:

MATERIAL	PERCENT OF REQUIRED MATERIAL
Water:	plus or minus 1 percent
Chemical admixtures:	0 to plus 6 percent

#### 3.2.1.5 Moisture Control

The plant shall be capable of ready adjustment to compensate for the varying moisture content of the aggregates and to change the weights of the materials being batched.

#### 3.2.1.6 Concrete Mixers

Mixers shall be stationary mixers or truck mixers. Mixers shall be capable of combining the materials into a uniform mixture and of discharging this mixture without segregation. The mixers shall not be charged in excess of the capacity recommended by the manufacturer. The mixers shall be operated at the drum or mixing blade speed designated by the manufacturer. The mixers shall be maintained in satisfactory operating condition, and the mixer drums shall be kept free of hardened concrete. Should any mixer at any time produce unsatisfactory results, its use shall be promptly discontinued until it is repaired.

#### 3.2.1.7 Stationary Mixers

Concrete plant mixers shall be drum-type mixers of tilting, nontilting, horizontal-shaft, or vertical-shaft type, or shall be pug mill type and shall be provided with an acceptable device to lock the discharge mechanism until the required mixing time has elapsed. The mixing time and uniformity shall conform to all the requirements in ASTM C 94/C 94M applicable to central-mixed concrete.

#### 3.2.1.8 Truck Mixers

Truck mixers, the mixing of concrete therein, and concrete uniformity shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C 94/C 94M. A truck mixer may be used either for complete mixing (transit-mixed) or to finish the partial mixing done in a stationary mixer (shrink-mixed). Each truck shall be equipped with two counters from which it is possible to determine the number of revolutions at mixing speed and the number of revolutions at agitating speed. Water shall not be added at the placing site unless specifically approved; and in no case shall the water be allowed to exceed the specified w/c. Any such water shall be injected at the base of the mixer, not at the discharge end. If truck mixers are proposed for use in the work, all water and ingredients conforming to the mix design shall be batched to the drum at the plant, in which case no water shall be carried in the truck's water tank. The Contractor may hold back a portion of the mix water from the batching for later site addition, subject to specific approval. The weights of all water in the truck's drum and the truck's water tank system shall be included on the batch weight ticket, and the combined water weights shall conform to the mix design for the concrete batched. Trucks shall not carry additional water, except that required to conform to the

mix design. The truck water tanks shall be equipped with water gauges in good working condition. The truck water tanks and batch weight tickets shall be inspected at the placement prior to placing concrete, if the truck is found to contain water exceeding the approved mix design, the batch shall be rejected and removed from Government property. Water from an on site source shall not be added to the trucks prior to or during placement. Water for cleaning or rinsing the mixer shall be obtained following concrete placement, from the Contractor's on site water supply after the truck has left the placement location.

### 3.3 NOT USED 3.4 NOT USED 3.5 TRANSPORTING CONCRETE TO PROJECT SITE

Concrete shall be transported to the placing site in truck mixers, agitators, nonagitating transporting equipment conforming to NRMCA TMMB 100 or by approved pumping equipment or conveyors.

### 3.6 CONVEYING CONCRETE ON SITE

Concrete shall be conveyed from mixer or transporting unit to forms as rapidly as possible and within the time interval specified by methods which will prevent segregation or loss of ingredients using following equipment. Conveying equipment shall be cleaned before each placement.

#### 3.6.1 Buckets

The interior hopper slope shall be not less than 58 degrees from the horizontal, the minimum dimension of the clear gate opening shall be at least 5 times the nominal maximum-size aggregate, and the area of the gate opening shall not be less than 0.2 square meters. The maximum dimension of the gate opening shall not be greater than twice the minimum dimension. The bucket gates shall be essentially grout tight when closed and may be manually, pneumatically, or hydraulically operated except that buckets larger than 1.5 cubic meters shall not be manually operated. The design of the bucket shall provide means for positive regulation of the amount and rate of deposit of concrete in each dumping position.

#### 3.6.2 Transfer Hoppers

Concrete may be charged into nonagitating hoppers for transfer to other conveying devices. Transfer hoppers shall be capable of receiving concrete directly from delivery vehicles and shall have conical-shaped discharge features. The transfer hopper shall be equipped with a hydraulically operated gate and with a means of external vibration to effect complete discharge. Concrete shall not be held in nonagitating transfer hoppers more than 30 minutes.

#### 3.6.3 Trucks

Truck mixers operating at agitating speed or truck agitators used for transporting plant-mixed concrete shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C 94/C 94M. Nonagitating equipment shall be used only for transporting plant-mixed concrete over a smooth road and when the hauling time is less than 15 minutes. Bodies of nonagitating equipment shall be smooth, watertight, metal containers specifically designed to transport concrete,

shaped with rounded corners to minimize segregation, and equipped with gates that will permit positive control of the discharge of the concrete.

#### 3.6.4 Chutes

When concrete can be placed directly from a truck mixer, agitator, or nonagitating equipment, the chutes normally attached to this equipment by the manufacturer may be used. A discharge deflector shall be used when required by the Contracting Officer. Separate chutes and other similar equipment will not be permitted for conveying concrete.

#### 3.6.5 Belt Conveyors

Belt conveyors shall be designed and operated to assure a uniform flow of concrete from mixer to final place of deposit without segregation of ingredients or loss of mortar and shall be provided with positive means, such as discharge baffle or hopper, for preventing segregation of the concrete at the transfer points and the point of placing. Belt conveyors shall be constructed such that the idler spacing shall not exceed 900 mm. The belt speed shall be a minimum of 90 meters per minute and a maximum of 225 meters per minute. If concrete is to be placed through installed horizontal or sloping reinforcing bars, the conveyor shall discharge concrete into a pipe or elephant truck that is long enough to extend through the reinforcing bars.

#### 3.6.6 Concrete Pumps

Concrete may be conveyed by positive displacement pump when approved. The pumping equipment shall be piston or squeeze pressure type; pneumatic placing equipment shall not be used. The pipeline shall be rigid steel pipe or heavy-duty flexible hose. The inside diameter of the pipe shall be at least 3 times the nominal maximum-size coarse aggregate in the concrete mixture to be pumped but not less than 100 mm. Aluminum pipe shall not be used.

### 3.7 PLACING CONCRETE

Mixed concrete shall be discharged within 1-1/2 hours or before the mixer drum has revolved 300 revolutions, whichever comes first after the introduction of the mixing water to the cement and aggregates. When the concrete temperature exceeds 30 degrees C, the time shall be reduced to 45 minutes. Concrete shall be placed within 15 minutes after it has been discharged from the transporting unit. Concrete shall be handled from mixer or transporting unit to forms in a continuous manner until the approved unit of operation is completed. Adequate scaffolding, ramps and walkways shall be provided so that personnel and equipment are not supported by in-place reinforcement. Placing will not be permitted when the sun, heat, wind, or limitations of facilities furnished by the Contractor prevent proper consolidation, finishing and curing. Sufficient placing capacity shall be provided so that concrete can be kept free of cold joints.

#### 3.7.1 Depositing Concrete

Concrete shall be deposited as close as possible to its final position in the forms, and there shall be no vertical drop greater than 1.5 meters except where suitable equipment is provided to prevent segregation and where specifically authorized. Depositing of the concrete shall be so regulated that it will be effectively consolidated in horizontal layers not more than 300 mm thick, except that all slabs shall be placed in a single layer. Concrete to receive other construction shall be screeded to the proper level. Concrete shall be deposited continuously in one layer or in layers so that fresh concrete is deposited on in-place concrete that is still plastic. Fresh concrete shall not be deposited on concrete that has hardened sufficiently to cause formation of seams or planes of weakness within the section. Concrete that has surface dried, partially hardened, or contains foreign material shall not be used. When temporary spreaders are used in the forms, the spreaders shall be removed as their service becomes unnecessary. Concrete shall not be placed in slabs over walls until concrete in walls has been in-place at least two hours or until the concrete begins to lose its plasticity.

### 3.7.2 Consolidation

Immediately after placing, each layer of concrete shall be consolidated by internal vibrators, except for slabs 100 mm thick or less. The vibrators shall at all times be adequate in effectiveness and number to properly consolidate the concrete; a spare vibrator shall be kept at the jobsite during all concrete placing operations. The vibrators shall have a frequency of not less than 10,000 vibrations per minute, an amplitude of at least 0.6 mm, and the head diameter shall be appropriate for the structural member and the concrete mixture being placed. Vibrators shall be inserted vertically at uniform spacing over the area of placement. The distance between insertions shall be approximately 1-1/2 times the radius of action of the vibrator so that the area being vibrated will overlap the adjacent just-vibrated area by a reasonable amount. The vibrator shall penetrate rapidly to the bottom of the layer and at least 150 mm into the preceding layer if there is such. Vibrator shall be held stationary until the concrete is consolidated and then vertically withdrawn slowly while operating. Form vibrators shall not be used unless specifically approved and unless forms are constructed to withstand their use. Vibrators shall not be used to move concrete within the forms. Slabs 100 mm and less in thickness shall be consolidated by properly designed vibrating screeds or other approved technique. Frequency and amplitude of vibrators shall be determined in accordance with COE CRD-C 521. Grate tampers ("jitterbugs") shall not be used.

### 3.7.3 Cold Weather Requirements

Special protection measures, approved by the Contracting Officer, shall be used if freezing temperatures are anticipated before the expiration of the specified curing period. The ambient temperature of the air where concrete is to be placed and the temperature of surfaces to receive concrete shall be not less than 5 degrees C. The temperature of the concrete when placed shall be not less than 10 degrees C nor more than 25 degrees C. Heating of the mixing water or aggregates will be required to regulate the concrete placing temperature. Materials entering the mixer shall be free from ice, snow, or frozen lumps. Salt, chemicals or other materials shall not be

incorporated in the concrete to prevent freezing. Upon written approval, an accelerating admixture conforming to ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C or E may be used, provided it contains no calcium chloride. Calcium chloride shall not be used.

#### 3.7.4 Hot Weather Requirements

When the ambient temperature during concrete placing is expected to exceed 30 degrees C, the concrete shall be placed and finished with procedures previously submitted and as specified herein. The concrete temperature at time of delivery to the forms shall not exceed the temperature shown in the table below when measured in accordance with ASTM C 1064/C 1064M. Cooling of the mixing water or aggregates or placing concrete in the cooler part of the day may be required to obtain an adequate placing temperature. A retarder may be used, as approved, to facilitate placing and finishing. Steel forms and reinforcements shall be cooled as approved prior to concrete placement when steel temperatures are greater than 49 degrees C. Conveying and placing equipment shall be cooled if necessary to maintain proper concrete-placing temperature.

##### Maximum Allowable Concrete Placing Temperature

Relative Humidity, Percent, During Time of Concrete Placement	Maximum Allowable Concrete Temperature Degrees
Greater than 60	33 C
40-60	30 C
Less than 40	27 C

#### 3.7.5 Prevention of Plastic Shrinkage Cracking

During hot weather with low humidity, and particularly with appreciable wind, as well as interior placements when space heaters produce low humidity, the Contractor shall be alert to the tendency for plastic shrinkage cracks to develop and shall institute measures to prevent this. Particular care shall be taken if plastic shrinkage cracking is potentially imminent and especially if it has developed during a previous placement. Periods of high potential for plastic shrinkage cracking can be anticipated by use of Fig. 2.1.5 of ACI 305R. In addition the concrete placement shall be further protected by erecting shades and windbreaks and by applying fog sprays of water, sprinkling, ponding or wet covering. Plastic shrinkage cracks that occur shall be filled by injection of epoxy resin as directed, after the concrete hardens. Plastic shrinkage cracks shall never be troweled over or filled with slurry.

#### 3.7.6 NOT USED 3.7.7 Placing Concrete in Congested Areas

Special care shall be used to ensure complete filling of the forms, elimination of all voids, and complete consolidation of the concrete when placing concrete in areas congested with reinforcing bars, embedded items, waterstops and other tight spacing. An appropriate concrete mixture shall

be used, and the nominal maximum size of aggregate (NMSA) shall meet the specified criteria when evaluated for the congested area. Vibrators with heads of a size appropriate for the clearances available shall be used, and the consolidation operation shall be closely supervised to ensure complete and thorough consolidation at all points. Where necessary, splices of reinforcing bars shall be alternated to reduce congestion. Where two mats of closely spaced reinforcing are required, the bars in each mat shall be placed in matching alignment to reduce congestion. Reinforcing bars may be temporarily crowded to one side during concrete placement provided they are returned to exact required location before concrete placement and consolidation are completed.

### 3.7.8 Placing Flowable Concrete

If a plasticizing admixture conforming to ASTM C 1017/C 1017M is used or if a Type F or G high range water reducing admixture is permitted to increase the slump, the concrete shall meet all requirements of paragraph GENERAL REQUIREMENTS in PART 1. Extreme care shall be used in conveying and placing the concrete to avoid segregation. Consolidation and finishing shall meet all requirements of paragraphs Placing Concrete, Finishing Formed Surfaces, and Finishing Unformed Surfaces. No relaxation of requirements to accommodate flowable concrete will be permitted.

## 3.8 JOINTS

Joints shall be located and constructed as indicated or approved. Joints not indicated on the drawings shall be located and constructed to minimize the impact on the strength of the structure. In general, such joints shall be located near the middle of the spans of supported slabs, beams, and girders unless a beam intersects a girder at this point, in which case the joint in the girder shall be offset a distance equal to twice the width of the beam. Joints in walls shall be at the underside of floors, slabs, beams, or girders and at the tops of footings or floor slabs, unless otherwise approved. Joints shall be perpendicular to the main reinforcement. All reinforcement shall be continued across construction joints as indicated on the contract drawings. The perimeters of the slabs shall be free of fins, rough edges, spalling, or other unsightly appearance. Reservoir for sealant for construction joints in slabs shall be formed to the dimensions shown on the contract drawings by removing snap-out joint-forming inserts, by sawing sawable inserts, or by sawing to widen the top portion of sawed joints. Joints to be sealed shall be cleaned and sealed as indicated and in accordance with Section Section 03150

### CONSTRUCTION and EXPANSION JOINTS .

#### 3.8.1 Construction Joints

For concrete other than slabs, construction joints shall be located so that the unit of operation does not exceed 23 meters. Concrete shall be placed continuously so that each unit is monolithic in construction. Fresh concrete shall not be placed against adjacent hardened concrete until it is at least 24 hours old. Construction joints shall be located as indicated or approved. Where concrete work is interrupted by weather, end of work shift or other similar type of delay, location and type of construction

joint shall be subject to approval of the Contracting Officer. Unless otherwise indicated reinforcing steel shall extend through construction joints. Concrete walls and piers shall be in place at least 2 hours, or until the concrete begins to lose its plasticity, before placing concrete for slabs thereon. In walls having door or window openings, lifts shall terminate at the top and bottom of the opening. Other lifts shall terminate at such levels as to conform to structural requirements or architectural details. Where horizontal construction joints in walls are required, a strip of 25 mm square-edge lumber, bevelled and oiled to facilitate removal, shall be tacked to the inside of the forms at the construction joint. Concrete shall be placed to a point 25 mm above the underside of the strip. The strip shall be removed 1 hour after the concrete has been placed, and any irregularities in the joint line shall be leveled off with a wood float, and all laitance shall be removed. Prior to placing additional concrete, horizontal construction joints shall be prepared as specified in paragraph Previously Placed Concrete.

3.8.2 NOT USED

3.8.3 Expansion Joints

Installation of expansion joints and sealing of these joints shall conform to the requirements of Section 03150 EXPANSION JOINTS, CONTRACTION JOINTS, AND WATERSTOPS and Section 07900 JOINT SEALING.

3.8.4 NOT USED

3.8.5 NOT USED

3.9 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

Forms, form materials, and form construction are specified in Section 03100 STRUCTURAL CONCRETE FORMWORK. Finishing of formed surfaces shall be as specified herein. Unless another type of architectural or special finish is specified, surfaces shall be left with the texture imparted by the forms except that defective surfaces shall be repaired. Unless painting of surfaces is required, uniform color of the concrete shall be maintained by use of only one mixture without changes in materials or proportions for any structure or portion of structure that requires a Class B finish. Except for major defects, as defined hereinafter, surface defects shall be repaired as specified herein within 24 hours after forms are removed. Repairs of the so-called "plaster-type" will not be permitted in any location. Tolerances of formed surfaces shall conform to the requirements of ACI 117/117R. These tolerances apply to the finished concrete surface, not to the forms themselves; forms shall be set true to line and grade. Form tie holes requiring repair and other defects whose depth is at least as great as their surface diameter shall be repaired as specified in paragraph Damp-Pack Mortar Repair. Defects whose surface diameter is greater than their depth shall be repaired as specified in paragraph Repair of Major Defects. Repairs shall be finished flush with adjacent surfaces and with the same surface texture. The cement used for all repairs shall be a blend of job cement with white cement proportioned so that the final color after curing and aging will be the same as the adjacent concrete. Concrete with excessive honeycomb, or other defects which affect the

strength of the member, will be rejected. Repairs shall be demonstrated to be acceptable and free from cracks or loose or drummy areas at the completion of the contract and, for Class B Finishes, shall be inconspicuous. Repairs not meeting these requirements will be rejected and shall be replaced.

#### 3.9.1 Class B Finish

Class B finish is required on concrete surfaces permanently exposed to view.

Fins, ravelings, and loose material shall be removed, all surface defects over 12 mm in diameter or more than 12 mm deep, shall be repaired and, except as otherwise indicated or as specified in Section 03100 STRUCTURAL CONCRETE FORMWORK, holes left by removal of form ties shall be reamed and filled. Defects more than 12 mm in diameter shall be cut back to sound concrete, but in all cases at least 25 mm deep.

#### 3.9.2 Class C and Class D Finish

Class C finish is required on concrete surfaces that receive subsequent covering Class D finish is required on concrete surfaces that are permanently concealed and which receive no subsequent covering Fins, ravelings, and loose material shall be removed, and, except as otherwise indicated or as specified in Section 03100 STRUCTURAL CONCRETE FORMWORK, holes left by removal of form ties shall be reamed and filled. Honeycomb and other defects more than 12 mm deep or more than 50 mm in diameter shall be repaired. Defects more than 50 mm in diameter shall be cut back to sound concrete, but in all cases at least 25 mm deep.

#### 3.9.3 NOT USED

### 3.10 REPAIRS

#### 3.10.1 Damp-Pack Mortar Repair

Form tie holes requiring repair and other defects whose depth is at least as great as their surface diameter but not over 100 mm shall be repaired by the damp-pack mortar method. Form tie holes shall be reamed and other similar defects shall be cut out to sound concrete. The void shall then be thoroughly cleaned, thoroughly wetted, brush-coated with a thin coat of neat cement grout and filled with mortar. Mortar shall be a stiff mix of 1 part portland cement to 2 parts fine aggregate passing the 1.18 mm sieve, and minimum amount of water. Only sufficient water shall be used to produce a mortar which, when used, will stick together on being molded into a ball by a slight pressure of the hands and will not exude water but will leave the hands damp. Mortar shall be mixed and allowed to stand for 30 to 45 minutes before use with remixing performed immediately prior to use. Mortar shall be thoroughly tamped in place in thin layers using a hammer and hardwood block. Holes passing entirely through walls shall be completely filled from the inside face by forcing mortar through to the outside face. All holes shall be packed full. Damp-pack repairs shall be moist cured for at least 48 hours.

#### 3.10.2 Repair of Major Defects

Major defects will be considered to be those more than 12 mm deep or, for Class A and B finishes, more than 12 mm in diameter and, for Class C and D finishes, more than 50 mm in diameter. Also included are any defects of any kind whose depth is over 100 mm or whose surface diameter is greater than their depth. Major defects shall be repaired as specified below.

#### 3.10.2.1 Surface Application of Mortar Repair

Defective concrete shall be removed, and removal shall extend into completely sound concrete. Approved equipment and procedures which will not cause cracking or microcracking of the sound concrete shall be used. If reinforcement is encountered, concrete shall be removed so as to expose the reinforcement for at least 50 mm on all sides. All such defective areas greater than 7800 square mm shall be outlined by saw cuts at least 25 mm deep. Defective areas less than 7800 square mm shall be outlined by a 25 mm deep cut with a core drill in lieu of sawing. All saw cuts shall be straight lines in a rectangular pattern in line with the formwork panels. After concrete removal, the surface shall be thoroughly cleaned by high pressure washing to remove all loose material. Surfaces shall be kept continually saturated for the first 12 of the 24 hours immediately before placing mortar and shall be damp but not wet at the time of commencing mortar placement. The Contractor, at his option, may use either hand-placed mortar or mortar placed with a mortar gun. If hand-placed mortar is used, the edges of the cut shall be perpendicular to the surface of the concrete. The prepared area shall be brush-coated with a thin coat of neat cement grout. The repair shall then be made using a stiff mortar, preshrunk by allowing the mixed mortar to stand for 30 to 45 minutes and then remixed, thoroughly tamped into place in thin layers. If hand-placed mortar is used, the Contractor shall test each repair area for drumminess by firm tapping with a hammer and shall inspect for cracks, both in the presence of the Contracting Officer's representative, immediately before completion of the contract, and shall replace any showing drumminess or cracking. If mortar placed with a mortar gun is used, the gun shall be a small compressed air-operated gun to which the mortar is slowly hand fed and which applies the mortar to the surface as a high-pressure stream, as approved. Repairs made using shotcrete equipment will not be accepted. The mortar used shall be the same mortar as specified for damp-pack mortar repair. If gun-placed mortar is used, the edges of the cut shall be beveled toward the center at a slope of 1:1. All surface applied mortar repairs shall be continuously moist cured for at least 7 days. Moist curing shall consist of several layers of saturated burlap applied to the surface immediately after placement is complete and covered with polyethylene sheeting, all held closely in place by a sheet of plywood or similar material rigidly braced against it. Burlap shall be kept continually wet.

#### 3.10.2.2 Repair of Deep and Large Defects

Deep and large defects will be those that are more than 150 mm deep and also have an average diameter at the surface more than 450 mm or that are otherwise so identified by the Project Office. Such defects shall be repaired as specified herein or directed, except that defects which affect the strength of the structure shall not be repaired and that portion of the structure shall be completely removed and replaced. Deep and large defects

shall be repaired by procedures approved in advance including forming and placing special concrete using applied pressure during hardening. Preparation of the repair area shall be as specified for surface application of mortar. In addition, the top edge (surface) of the repair area shall be sloped at approximately 20 degrees from the horizontal, upward toward the side from which concrete will be placed. The special concrete shall be a concrete mixture with low water content and low slump, and shall be allowed to age 30 to 60 minutes before use. Concrete containing a specified expanding admixture may be used in lieu of the above mixture; the paste portion of such concrete mixture shall be designed to have an expansion between 2.0 and 4.0 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM C 940. A full width "chimney" shall be provided at the top of the form on the placing side to ensure filling to the top of the opening. A pressure cap shall be used on the concrete in the chimney with simultaneous tightening and revibrating the form during hardening to ensure a tight fit for the repair. The form shall be removed after 24 hours and immediately the chimney shall be carefully chipped away to avoid breaking concrete out of the repair; the surface of the repair concrete shall be dressed as required.

### 3.10.3 NOT USED

### 3.11 FINISHING UNFORMED SURFACES

The finish of all unformed surfaces shall meet the requirements of paragraph Tolerances in PART 1, when tested as specified herein.

#### 3.11.1 General

The ambient temperature of spaces adjacent to unformed surfaces being finished and of the base on which concrete will be placed shall be not less than 10 degrees C. In hot weather all requirements of paragraphs Hot Weather Requirements and Prevention of Plastic Shrinkage Cracking shall be met. Unformed surfaces that are not to be covered by additional concrete or backfill shall have a float finish, with additional finishing as specified below, and shall be true to the elevation shown on the drawings. Surfaces to receive additional concrete or backfill shall be brought to the elevation shown on the drawings, properly consolidated, and left true and regular. Unless otherwise shown on the drawings, exterior surfaces shall be sloped for drainage, as indicated on the contract drawings directed. Joints shall be carefully made with a jointing or edging tool. The finished surfaces shall be protected from stains or abrasions. Grate tampers or "jitterbugs" shall not be used for any surfaces. The dusting of surfaces with dry cement or other materials or the addition of any water during finishing shall not be permitted. If bleedwater is present prior to finishing, the excess water shall be carefully dragged off or removed by absorption with porous materials such as burlap. During finishing operations, extreme care shall be taken to prevent over finishing or working water into the surface; this can cause "crazing" (surface shrinkage cracks which appear after hardening) of the surface. Any slabs with surfaces which exhibit significant crazing shall be removed and replaced. During finishing operations, surfaces shall be checked with a 10 foot straightedge, applied in both directions at regular intervals while the concrete is still plastic, to detect high or low areas.

### 3.11.2 Rough Slab Finish

As a first finishing operation for unformed surfaces, the surface shall receive a rough slab finish prepared as follows. The concrete shall be uniformly placed across the slab area, consolidated as previously specified, and then screeded with straightedge strikeoffs immediately after consolidation to bring the surface to the required finish level with no coarse aggregate visible. Side forms and screed rails shall be provided, rigidly supported, and set to exact line and grade. Allowable tolerances for finished surfaces apply only to the hardened concrete, not to forms or screed rails. Forms and screed rails shall be set true to line and grade. "Wet screeds" shall not be used.

### 3.11.3 Floated Finish

Slabs to receive more than a rough slab finish shall next be given a wood float finish. The screeding shall be followed immediately by darbying or bull floating before bleeding water is present, to bring the surface to a true, even plane. Then, after the concrete has stiffened so that it will withstand a man's weight without imprint of more than 6 mm and the water sheen has disappeared, it shall be floated to a true and even plane free of ridges. Floating shall be performed by use of suitable hand floats or power driven equipment. Sufficient pressure shall be used on the floats to bring a film of moisture to the surface. Hand floats shall be made of wood, magnesium, or aluminum. Concrete that exhibits stickiness shall be floated with a magnesium float. Care shall be taken to prevent over-finishing or incorporating water into the surface.

### 3.11.4 Troweled Finish

Exposed interior floor slabs shall be given a trowel finish. After floating is complete and after the surface moisture has disappeared, unformed surfaces shall be steel-troweled to a smooth, even, dense finish, free from blemishes including trowel marks. In lieu of hand finishing, an approved power finishing machine may be used in accordance with the directions of the machine manufacturer. Additional trowelings shall be performed, either by hand or machine until the surface has been troweled 3 times, with waiting period between each. Care shall be taken to prevent blistering and if such occurs, troweling shall immediately be stopped and operations and surfaces corrected. A final hard steel troweling shall be done by hand, with the trowel tipped, and using hard pressure, when the surface is at a point that the trowel will produce a ringing sound. The finished surface shall be thoroughly consolidated and shall be essentially free of trowel marks and be uniform in texture and appearance. The concrete mixture used for troweled finished areas shall be adjusted, if necessary, in order to provide sufficient fines (cementitious material and fine sand) to finish properly.

### 3.11.5 NOT USED

### 3.11.6 Non-Slip Finish

Non-slip floors shall be constructed in accordance with the following

subparagraphs.

#### 3.11.6.1 Broomed

Exterior slabs shall be given a broomed finish. After floating, the surface shall be lightly steel troweled, and then carefully scored by pulling a coarse fiber push-type broom across the surface. Brooming shall be transverse to traffic or at right angles to the slope of the slab. After the end of the curing period, the surface shall be vigorously broomed with a coarse fiber broom to remove all loose or semi-detached particles.

#### 3.11.6.2 NOT USED

#### 3.11.7 NOT USED

#### 3.11.8 NOT USED

#### 3.11.9 NOT USED

#### 3.12 FLOOR HARDENER

Permanently exposed interior concrete slabs shall be treated with floor hardener. Floor hardener shall be applied after the concrete has been cured and then air dried for 28 days. Three coats shall be applied, each the day after the preceding coat was applied. For the first application, 0.5 kg of the silicofluoride shall be dissolved in 4 liters of water. For subsequent applications, the solution shall be 1.0 kg of silicofluoride to each 4 liters of water. Floor should be mopped with clear water shortly after the preceding application has dried to remove encrusted salts. Proprietary hardeners shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. During application, area should be well ventilated. Precautions shall be taken when applying silicofluorides due to the toxicity of the salts. Any compound that contacts glass or aluminum should be immediately removed with clear water.

#### 3.13 EXTERIOR SLAB AND RELATED ITEMS

##### 3.13.1 Exterior Slabs on Grade

Exterior slabs on grade shall be constructed where shown on the drawings. After forms are set and underlying material prepared as specified, the concrete shall be placed uniformly throughout the area and thoroughly vibrated. As soon as placed and vibrated, the concrete shall be struck off and screeded to the crown and cross section and to such elevation above grade that when consolidated and finished, the surface of the slabs will be at the required elevation. The entire surface shall be tamped with the strike off, or consolidated with a vibrating screed, and this operation continued until the required compaction and reduction of internal and surface voids are accomplished. Care shall be taken to prevent bringing excess paste to the surface. Immediately following the final consolidation of the surface, the slabs shall be floated longitudinally from bridges resting on the side forms and spanning but not touching the concrete. If necessary, additional concrete shall be placed and screeded, and the float operated until a satisfactory surface has been produced. The floating

operation shall be advanced not more than half the length of the float and then continued over the new and previously floated surfaces. After finishing is completed but while the concrete is still plastic, minor irregularities and score marks in the slab surface shall be eliminated by means of long-handled cutting straightedges. Straightedges shall be 3.75 m in length and shall be operated from the sides of the slabs and from bridges. A straightedge operated from the side of the slabs shall be equipped with a handle 1 m longer than one-half the width of the slabs. The surface shall then be tested for trueness with a 3.75 straightedge held in successive positions parallel and at right angles to the center line of the slabs, and the whole area covered as necessary to detect variations. The straightedge shall be advanced along the slabs in successive stages of not more than one-half the length of the straightedge.

Depressions shall be immediately filled with freshly mixed concrete, struck off, consolidated, and refinished. Projections above the required elevation shall also be struck off and refinished. The straightedge testing and finishing shall continue until the entire surface of the concrete is true. Before the surface sheen has disappeared and well before the concrete becomes nonplastic, the surface of the slabs shall be given a nonslip sandy surface texture by use of a burlap drag. A strip of clean, wet burlap from 1.0 to 1.5 m wide and 0.7 m longer than the slab width shall be carefully pulled across the surface. Edges and joints shall be rounded with an edger having a radius of 3 mm. Curing shall be as specified.

### 3.13.2 NOT USED 3.14 CURING AND PROTECTION

#### 3.14.1 General

Concrete shall be continuously cured by an approved method for at least 7 days.

Immediately after placement, concrete shall be protected from premature drying, extremes in temperatures, rapid temperature change, mechanical injury and damage from rain and flowing water for the duration of the curing period. Air and forms in contact with concrete shall be maintained at a temperature above 10 degrees C for the first 3 days and at a temperature above 0 degrees C for the remainder of the specified curing period. Exhaust fumes from combustion heating units shall be vented to the outside of the enclosure, and heaters and ducts shall be placed and directed so as not to cause areas of overheating and drying of concrete surfaces or to create fire hazards. Materials and equipment needed for adequate curing and protection shall be available and at the site prior to placing concrete. No fire or excessive heat, including welding, shall be permitted near or in direct contact with the concrete at any time. Except as otherwise permitted by paragraph Membrane Forming Curing Compounds, moist curing shall be provided for any areas to receive floor hardener, any paint or other applied coating, or to which other concrete is to be bonded.

Concrete containing silica fume shall be initially cured by fog misting during finishing, followed immediately by continuous moist curing. Except for plastic coated burlap, impervious sheeting alone shall not be used for curing.

### 3.14.2 Moist Curing

Concrete to be moist-cured shall be maintained continuously wet for the entire curing period, commencing immediately after finishing. If water or curing materials used stain or discolor concrete surfaces which are to be permanently exposed, the concrete surfaces shall be cleaned as approved. When wooden forms are left in place during curing, they shall be kept wet at all times. If steel forms are used in hot weather, nonsupporting vertical forms shall be broken loose from the concrete soon after the concrete hardens and curing water continually applied in this void. If the forms are removed before the end of the curing period, curing shall be carried out as on unformed surfaces, using suitable materials. Surfaces shall be cured by ponding, by continuous sprinkling, by continuously saturated burlap or cotton mats, or by continuously saturated plastic coated burlap. Burlap and mats shall be clean and free from any contamination and shall be completely saturated before being placed on the concrete. The Contractor shall have an approved work system to ensure that moist curing is continuous 24 hours per day.

### 3.14.3 Membrane Forming Curing Compounds

Membrane curing shall not be used on surfaces that are to receive any subsequent treatment depending on adhesion or bonding to the concrete, including surfaces to which a smooth finish is to be applied or other concrete to be bonded. However, a styrene acrylate or chlorinated rubber compound meeting ASTM C 309, Class B requirements, may be used for surfaces which are to be painted or are to receive bituminous roofing or waterproofing, or floors that are to receive adhesive applications of resilient flooring. The curing compound selected shall be compatible with any subsequent paint, roofing, waterproofing or flooring specified. Membrane curing compound shall not be used on surfaces that are maintained at curing temperatures with free steam. Curing compound shall be applied to formed surfaces immediately after the forms are removed and prior to any patching or other surface treatment except the cleaning of loose sand, mortar, and debris from the surface. All surfaces shall be thoroughly moistened with water. Curing compound shall be applied to slab surfaces as soon as the bleeding water has disappeared, with the tops of joints being temporarily sealed to prevent entry of the compound and to prevent moisture loss during the curing period. The curing compound shall be applied in a two-coat continuous operation by approved motorized power-spraying equipment operating at a minimum pressure of 500 kPa, at a uniform coverage of not more than 10 cubic meters per L for each coat, and the second coat shall be applied perpendicular to the first coat. Concrete surfaces which have been subjected to rainfall within 3 hours after curing compound has been applied shall be resprayed by the method and at the coverage specified. Surfaces on which clear compound is used shall be shaded from direct rays of the sun for the first 3 days. Surfaces coated with curing compound shall be kept free of foot and vehicular traffic, and from other sources of abrasion and contamination during the curing period.

### 3.14.4 Impervious Sheeting

The following concrete surfaces may be cured using impervious sheets: slabs that will be permanently covered with a floor covering. However, except

for plastic coated burlap, impervious sheeting alone shall not be used for curing. Impervious-sheet curing shall only be used on horizontal or nearly horizontal surfaces. Surfaces shall be thoroughly wetted and be completely covered with the sheeting. Sheeting shall be at least 450 mm wider than the concrete surface to be covered. Covering shall be laid with light-colored side up. Covering shall be lapped not less than 300 mm and securely weighted down or shall be lapped not less than 100 mm and taped to form a continuous cover with completely closed joints. The sheet shall be weighted to prevent displacement so that it remains in contact with the concrete during the specified length of curing. Coverings shall be folded down over exposed edges of slabs and secured by approved means. Sheets shall be immediately repaired or replaced if tears or holes appear during the curing period.

#### 3.14.5 Cold Weather Curing and Protection

When the daily ambient low temperature is less than 0 degrees C the temperature of the concrete shall be maintained above 5 degrees C for the first seven days after placing. During the period of protection removal, the air temperature adjacent to the concrete surfaces shall be controlled so that concrete near the surface will not be subjected to a temperature differential of more than 13 degrees C as determined by suitable temperature measuring devices furnished by the Contractor, as required, and installed adjacent to the concrete surface and 50 mm inside the surface of the concrete. The installation of the thermometers shall be made by the Contractor as directed.

#### 3.15 SETTING BASE PLATES AND BEARING PLATES

After being properly positioned, column base plates, bearing plates for beams and similar structural members, and machinery and equipment base plates shall be set to the proper line and elevation with damp-pack bedding mortar, except where nonshrink grout is indicated on the contract drawings.

The thickness of the mortar or grout shall be approximately 1/24 the width of the plate, but not less than 20 mm. Concrete and metal surfaces in contact with grout shall be clean and free of oil and grease, and concrete surfaces in contact with grout shall be damp and free of laitance when grout is placed.

##### 3.15.1 Damp-Pack Bedding Mortar

Damp-pack bedding mortar shall consist of 1 part cement and 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate having water content such that a mass of mortar tightly squeezed in the hand will retain its shape but will crumble when disturbed.

The space between the top of the concrete and bottom of the bearing plate or base shall be packed with the bedding mortar by tamping or ramming with a bar or rod until it is completely filled.

##### 3.15.2 Nonshrink Grout

Nonshrink grout shall be a ready-mixed material requiring only the addition of water. Water content shall be the minimum that will provide a flowable mixture and completely fill the space to be grouted without segregation, bleeding, or reduction of strength.

### 3.15.2.1 Mixing and Placing of Nonshrink Grout

Mixing and placing shall be in conformance with the material manufacturer's instructions and as specified therein. Ingredients shall be thoroughly dry-mixed before adding water. After adding water, the batch shall be mixed for 3 minutes. Batches shall be of size to allow continuous placement of freshly mixed grout. Grout not used within 30 minutes after mixing shall be discarded. The space between the top of the concrete or machinery-bearing surface and the plate shall be filled solid with the grout. Forms shall be of wood or other equally suitable material for completely retaining the grout on all sides and on top and shall be removed after the grout has set. The placed grout shall be carefully worked by rodding or other means to eliminate voids; however, overworking and breakdown of the initial set shall be avoided. Grout shall not be retempered or subjected to vibration from any source. Where clearances are unusually small, placement shall be under pressure with a grout pump. Temperature of the grout, and of surfaces receiving the grout, shall be maintained at 18 to 30 degrees C until after setting.

### 3.15.2.2 Treatment of Exposed Surfaces

For metal-oxidizing nonshrink grout, exposed surfaces shall be cut back 25 mm and immediately covered with a parge coat of mortar consisting of 1 part portland cement and 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate by weight, with sufficient water to make a plastic mixture. The parge coat shall have a smooth finish. For other mortars or grouts, exposed surfaces shall have a smooth-dense finish and be left untreated. Curing shall comply with paragraph CURING AND PROTECTION.

## 3.16 TESTING AND INSPECTION FOR CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL

The Contractor shall perform the inspection and tests described below and, based upon the results of these inspections and tests, shall take the action required and shall submit specified reports. When, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, the concreting operation is out of control, concrete placement shall cease and the operation shall be corrected. The laboratory performing the tests shall be onsite and shall conform with ASTM C 1077. Materials may be subjected to check testing by the Government from samples obtained at the manufacturer, at transfer points, or at the project site. The Government will inspect the laboratory, equipment, and test procedures prior to start of concreting operations and at least once per 1100 cubic meters of concrete production thereafter for conformance with ASTM C 1077.

### 3.16.1 Grading and Corrective Action

#### 3.16.1.1 Fine Aggregate

At least once during each shift when the concrete plant is operating, there shall be one sieve analysis and fineness modulus determination in accordance with ASTM C 136 and COE CRD-C 104 for the fine aggregate or for each fine aggregate if it is batched in more than one size or classification. The location at which samples are taken may be selected by

the Contractor as the most advantageous for control. However, the Contractor is responsible for delivering fine aggregate to the mixer within specification limits. When the amount passing on any sieve is outside the specification limits, the fine aggregate shall be immediately resampled and retested. If there is another failure on any sieve, the fact shall immediately reported to the Contracting Officer, concreting shall be stopped, and immediate steps taken to correct the grading.

#### 3.16.1.2 Coarse Aggregate

At least once during each shift in which the concrete plant is operating, there shall be a sieve analysis in accordance with ASTM C 136 for each size of coarse aggregate. The location at which samples are taken may be selected by the Contractor as the most advantageous for production control.

However, the Contractor shall be responsible for delivering the aggregate to the mixer within specification limits. A test record of samples of aggregate taken at the same locations shall show the results of the current test as well as the average results of the five most recent tests including the current test. The Contractor may adopt limits for control coarser than the specification limits for samples taken other than as delivered to the mixer to allow for degradation during handling. When the amount passing any sieve is outside the specification limits, the coarse aggregate shall be immediately resampled and retested. If the second sample fails on any sieve, that fact shall be reported to the Contracting Officer. Where two consecutive averages of 5 tests are outside specification limits, the operation shall be considered out of control and shall be reported to the Contracting Officer. Concreting shall be stopped and immediate steps shall be taken to correct the grading.

#### 3.16.2 Quality of Aggregates

Thirty days prior to the start of concrete placement, the Contractor shall perform all tests for aggregate quality required by ASTM C 33 and the other specified requirements. In addition, after the start of concrete placement, the Contractor shall perform tests for aggregate quality at least every three months, and when the source of aggregate or aggregate quality changes. Samples tested after the start of concrete placement shall be taken immediately prior to entering the concrete mixer.

#### 3.16.3 Scales, Batching and Recording

The accuracy of the scales shall be checked by test weights prior to start of concrete operations and at least once every three months. Such tests shall also be made as directed whenever there are variations in properties of the fresh concrete that could result from batching errors. Once a week the accuracy of each batching and recording device shall be checked during a weighing operation by noting and recording the required weight, recorded weight, and the actual weight batched. At the same time, the Contractor shall test and ensure that the devices for dispensing admixtures are operating properly and accurately. When either the weighing accuracy or batching accuracy does not comply with specification requirements, the plant shall not be operated until necessary adjustments or repairs have been made. Discrepancies in recording accuracies shall be corrected immediately.

#### 3.16.4 Batch-Plant Control

The measurement of concrete materials including cementitious materials, each size of aggregate, water, and admixtures shall be continuously controlled. The aggregate weights and amount of added water shall be continuously adjusted as necessary to compensate for free moisture in the aggregates. The amount of air-entraining agent shall be adjusted to control air content within specified limits. A report shall be prepared indicating type and source of cement used, type and source of pozzolan or slag used, amount and source of admixtures used, aggregate source, the required aggregate and water weights per cubic meter, amount of water as free moisture in each size of aggregate, and the batch aggregate and water weights per cubic meter for each class of concrete batched during each day's plant operation.

#### 3.16.5 Concrete Mixture

- a. Air Content Testing. Air content tests shall be made when test specimens are fabricated. In addition, at least two tests for air content shall be made on randomly selected batches of each separate concrete mixture produced during each 8-hour period of concrete production. Additional tests shall be made when excessive variation in workability is reported by the placing foreman or Government inspector. Tests shall be made in accordance with ASTM C 231 for normal weight concrete and ASTM C 173 for lightweight concrete. Test results shall be plotted on control charts which shall at all times be readily available to the Government and shall be submitted weekly. Copies of the current control charts shall be kept in the field by testing crews and results plotted as tests are made. When a single test result reaches either the upper or lower action limit, a second test shall immediately be made. The results of the two tests shall be averaged and this average used as the air content of the batch to plot on both the air content and the control chart for range, and for determining need for any remedial action. The result of each test, or average as noted in the previous sentence, shall be plotted on a separate control chart for each mixture on which an "average line" is set at the midpoint of the specified air content range from paragraph Air Entrainment. An upper warning limit and a lower warning limit line shall be set 1.0 percentage point above and below the average line, respectively. An upper action limit and a lower action limit line shall be set 1.5 percentage points above and below the average line, respectively. The range between each two consecutive tests shall be plotted on a secondary control chart for range where an upper warning limit is set at 2.0 percentage points and an upper action limit is set at 3.0 percentage points. Samples for air content may be taken at the mixer, however, the Contractor is responsible for delivering the concrete to the placement site at the stipulated air content. If the Contractor's materials or transportation methods cause air content loss between the mixer and the placement, correlation samples shall be taken at the placement site as required by the Contracting Officer, and the air content at the mixer controlled

as directed.

- b. Air Content Corrective Action. Whenever points on the control chart for percent air reach either warning limit, an adjustment shall immediately be made in the amount of air-entraining admixture batched. As soon as practical after each adjustment, another test shall be made to verify the result of the adjustment. Whenever a point on the secondary control chart for range reaches the warning limit, the admixture dispenser shall be recalibrated to ensure that it is operating accurately and with good reproducibility. Whenever a point on either control chart reaches an action limit line, the air content shall be considered out of control and the concreting operation shall immediately be halted until the air content is under control. Additional air content tests shall be made when concreting is restarted.
- c. Slump Testing. In addition to slump tests which shall be made when test specimens are fabricated, at least four slump tests shall be made on randomly selected batches in accordance with ASTM C 143/C 143M for each separate concrete mixture produced during each 8-hour or less period of concrete production each day. Also, additional tests shall be made when excessive variation in workability is reported by the placing foreman or Government inspector. Test results shall be plotted on control charts which shall at all times be readily available to the Government and shall be submitted weekly. Copies of the current control charts shall be kept in the field by testing crews and results plotted as tests are made. When a single slump test reaches or goes beyond either the upper or lower action limit, a second test shall immediately be made. The results of the two tests shall be averaged and this average used as the slump of the batch to plot on both the control charts for slump and the chart for range, and for determining need for any remedial action. Limits shall be set on separate control charts for slump for each type of mixture. The upper warning limit shall be set at 12.5 mm below the maximum allowable slump specified in paragraph Slump in PART 1 for each type of concrete and an upper action limit line and lower action limit line shall be set at the maximum and minimum allowable slumps, respectively, as specified in the same paragraph. The range between each consecutive slump test for each type of mixture shall be plotted on a single control chart for range on which an upper action limit is set at 50 mm. Samples for slump shall be taken at the mixer. However, the Contractor is responsible for delivering the concrete to the placement site at the stipulated slump. If the Contractor's materials or transportation methods cause slump loss between the mixer and the placement, correlation samples shall be taken at the placement site as required by the Contracting Officer, and the slump at the mixer controlled as directed.
- d. Slump Corrective Action. Whenever points on the control charts for slump reach the upper warning limit, an adjustment shall immediately be made in the batch weights of water and fine aggregate. The adjustments are to be made so that the total water

content does not exceed that amount allowed by the maximum w/c ratio specified, based on aggregates which are in a saturated surface dry condition. When a single slump reaches the upper or lower action limit, no further concrete shall be delivered to the placing site until proper adjustments have been made. Immediately after each adjustment, another test shall be made to verify the correctness of the adjustment. Whenever two consecutive individual slump tests, made during a period when there was no adjustment of batch weights, produce a point on the control chart for range at or above the upper action limit, the concreting operation shall immediately be halted, and the Contractor shall take appropriate steps to bring the slump under control. Additional slump tests shall be made as directed.

- e. Temperature. The temperature of the concrete shall be measured when compressive strength specimens are fabricated. Measurement shall be in accordance with ASTM C 1064/C 1064M. The temperature shall be reported along with the compressive strength data.
- f. Strength Specimens. At least one set of test specimens shall be made, for compressive strength, on each different concrete mixture placed during the day for each 90 cubic meters or portion thereof of that concrete mixture placed each day. Additional sets of test specimens shall be made, as directed by the Contracting Officer, when the mixture proportions are changed or when low strengths have been detected. A truly random (not haphazard) sampling plan shall be developed by the Contractor and approved by the Contracting Officer prior to the start of construction. The plan shall assure that sampling is done in a completely random and unbiased manner. A set of test specimens for concrete with a 28-day specified strength per paragraph Strength Requirements in PART 1 shall consist of four specimens, two to be tested at 7 days and two at 28 days. Test specimens shall be molded and cured in accordance with ASTM C 31/C 31M and tested in accordance with ASTM C 39/C 39M for test cylinders and. Results of all strength tests shall be reported immediately to the Contracting Officer. Quality control charts shall be kept for individual strength "tests", ("test" as defined in paragraph Strength Requirements in PART 1) moving average of last 3 "tests" for strength, and moving average for range for the last 3 "tests" for each mixture. The charts shall be similar to those found in ACI 214.3R.

#### 3.16.6 Inspection Before Placing

Foundations, construction joints, forms, and embedded items shall be inspected by the Contractor in sufficient time prior to each concrete placement in order to certify to the Contracting Officer that they are ready to receive concrete. The results of each inspection shall be reported in writing.

#### 3.16.7 Placing

The placing foreman shall supervise placing operations, shall determine that the correct quality of concrete or grout is placed in each location as

specified and as directed by the Contracting Officer, and shall be responsible for measuring and recording concrete temperatures and ambient temperature hourly during placing operations, weather conditions, time of placement, volume placed, and method of placement. The placing foreman shall not permit batching and placing to begin until it has been verified that an adequate number of vibrators in working order and with competent operators are available. Placing shall not be continued if any pile of concrete is inadequately consolidated. If any batch of concrete fails to meet the temperature requirements, immediate steps shall be taken to improve temperature controls.

#### 3.16.8 Vibrators

The frequency and amplitude of each vibrator shall be determined in accordance with COE CRD-C 521 prior to initial use and at least once a month when concrete is being placed. Additional tests shall be made as directed when a vibrator does not appear to be adequately consolidating the concrete. The frequency shall be determined while the vibrator is operating in concrete with the tachometer being held against the upper end of the vibrator head while almost submerged and just before the vibrator is withdrawn from the concrete. The amplitude shall be determined with the head vibrating in air. Two measurements shall be taken, one near the tip and another near the upper end of the vibrator head, and these results averaged. The make, model, type, and size of the vibrator and frequency and amplitude results shall be reported in writing. Any vibrator not meeting the requirements of paragraph Consolidation, shall be immediately removed from service and repaired or replaced.

#### 3.16.9 Curing Inspection

- a. Moist Curing Inspections. At least once each shift, and not less than twice per day on both work and non-work days, an inspection shall be made of all areas subject to moist curing. The surface moisture condition shall be noted and recorded.
- b. Moist Curing Corrective Action. When a daily inspection report lists an area of inadequate curing, immediate corrective action shall be taken, and the required curing period for those areas shall be extended by 1 day.
- c. Membrane Curing Inspection. No curing compound shall be applied until the Contractor has verified that the compound is properly mixed and ready for spraying. At the end of each operation, the Contractor shall estimate the quantity of compound used by measurement of the container and the area of concrete surface covered, shall compute the rate of coverage in square meters per Liter, and shall note whether or not coverage is uniform.
- d. Membrane Curing Corrective Action. When the coverage rate of the curing compound is less than that specified or when the coverage is not uniform, the entire surface shall be sprayed again.
- e. Sheet Curing Inspection. At least once each shift and once per day on non-work days, an inspection shall be made of all areas

being cured using impervious sheets. The condition of the covering and the tightness of the laps and tapes shall be noted and recorded.

- f. Sheet Curing Corrective Action. When a daily inspection report lists any tears, holes, or laps or joints that are not completely closed, the tears and holes shall promptly be repaired or the sheets replaced, the joints closed, and the required curing period for those areas shall be extended by 1 day.

#### 3.16.10 Cold-Weather Protection

At least once each shift and once per day on non-work days, an inspection shall be made of all areas subject to cold-weather protection. Any deficiencies shall be noted, corrected, and reported.

#### 3.16.11 Mixer Uniformity

- a. Stationary Mixers. Prior to the start of concrete placing and once every 6 months when concrete is being placed, or once for every 60,000 cubic meters of concrete placed, whichever results in the shortest time interval, uniformity of concrete mixing shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
- b. Truck Mixers. Prior to the start of concrete placing and at least once every 6 months when concrete is being placed, uniformity of concrete mixing shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C 94/C 94M. The truck mixers shall be selected randomly for testing. When satisfactory performance is found in one truck mixer, the performance of mixers of substantially the same design and condition of the blades may be regarded as satisfactory.
- c. Mixer Uniformity Corrective Action. When a mixer fails to meet mixer uniformity requirements, either the mixing time shall be increased, batching sequence changed, batch size reduced, or adjustments shall be made to the mixer until compliance is achieved.

#### 3.16.12 Reports

All results of tests or inspections conducted shall be reported informally as they are completed and in writing daily. A weekly report shall be prepared for the updating of control charts covering the entire period from the start of the construction season through the current week. During periods of cold-weather protection, reports of pertinent temperatures shall be made daily. These requirements do not relieve the Contractor of the obligation to report certain failures immediately as required in preceding paragraphs. Such reports of failures and the action taken shall be confirmed in writing in the routine reports. The Contracting Officer has the right to examine all contractor quality control records.

-- End of Section --

## SECTION 07240

EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS  
10/01

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred within the text by the basic designation only.

## AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS (ASTM)

ASTM B 117	(1997) Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM C 67	(2000) Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay products
ASTM C 150	(2000) Portland Cement
ASTM C 473	(2000) Physical Testing of Gypsum Panel Products
ASTM C 578	(1995) Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
ASTM C 847	1995 Metal Lath
ASTM C 920	(1998) Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM C 1177/C 1177M	(1999) Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing
ASTM C 1186	(1999; Rev. A) Flat Non-Asbestos Fiber-Cement Sheets
ASTM D 968	(1993) Abrasion Resistance of Organic Coatings by Falling Abrasive
ASTM D 2247	(1999) Testing Water Resistance of Coatings in 100% Relative Humidity
ASTM D 3273	(2000) Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber
ASTM E 84	(2000) Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

ASTM E 136	(1999) Behavior of Materials in Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 Degrees C
ASTM E 330	(1997) Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
ASTM E 331	(2000) Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
ASTM E 695	(1997) Measuring Relative Resistance of Wall, Floor, and Roof Construction to Impact Loading
ASTM G 23	(1996) Operating Light-Exposure Apparatus (Carbon-Arc Type) with and Without Water for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

## EXTERIOR INSULATION MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (EIMA)

EIMA TM 101.01	(1995) Freeze/Thaw Resistance of Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS), Class PB.
EIMA TM 101.86	(1995, Rev. Aug. 1995) Resistance of Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems, Class PB, to the Effects of Rapid Deformation (Impact)
EIMA TM 105.01	(1995) Alkali Resistance of Glass Fiber Reinforcing Mesh for Use in Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems

## INTERNATIONAL CONFERENCE OF BUILDING OFFICIALS (ICBO)

UBC 26-4	Evaluation of Flammability Characteristics of Exterior, Non load-Bearing Wall Panel Assemblies using Foam Plastic Insulation
UBC 26-9	Evaluation of Flammability Characteristics of Exterior Non load-Bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components using Intermediate-Scale, Multistory Test Apparatus Title

## NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 268	(1996) Determining Ignitability of Exterior Wall Assemblies Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source
----------	--

## 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION AND REQUIREMENTS

The exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS) shall be a job-fabricated exterior wall covering consisting of sheathing, insulation board, reinforcing fabric, base coat, finish coat, adhesive and mechanical fasteners as applicable. The system components shall be compatible with each other and with the substrate as recommended or approved by, and the products of, a single manufacturer regularly engaged in furnishing Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems. All materials shall be installed by an applicator approved by the system manufacturer. EIFS shall be Class PB and shall be as scheduled color and finish.

#### 1.2.1 System Requirements and Tests

The system shall meet the performance requirements as verified by the tests listed below. Where a wall system of similar type, size, and design as specified for this project has been previously tested under the condition specified herein, the resulting test reports may be submitted in lieu of job specific tests.

##### 1.2.1.1 Water Penetration

Test the system for water penetration by uniform static air pressure in accordance with ASTM E 331. There shall be no penetration of water beyond the plane of the base coat/EPS board interface after 15 minutes at 300 Pa (, or 20% of positive design wind pressure, whichever is greater.

##### 1.2.1.2 Wind Load

Test the system for wind load by uniform static air pressure in accordance with ASTM E 330 (procedure A) to a minimum pressure of 1197 Pa . There shall be no permanent deformation, delamination, or other deterioration.

##### 1.2.1.3 Full scale or intermediate scale fire test

Conduct wall fire test using apparatus, specimen, performance criteria, and procedure in accordance with UBC 26-4. The specimen shall include the complete system using 102mm (4 inch) thick insulation board. At the option of the contractor, UBC 26-9, Intermediate-Scale Test may be substituted in lieu of the Full-Scale Multi- Story Fire test. The following requirements shall be met:

- a. No vertical spread of flame within core of panel from one story to the next.
- b. No flame spread over the exterior surface.
- c. No vertical flame spread over the interior surface from one story to the next.
- d. No significant lateral spread of flame from compartment of fire origin to adjacent spaces.

##### 1.2.1.4 Mock-Up Installation of EIFS

Complete wall mock-up installation 1200 mm high by 1200 mm wide, including

typical control joints . Control joints to be filled with sealant of type, manufacturer, and color selected. Construct mock-up installation at job site. Build mock-up to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed work:

- a. Locate mock-up installation(s) in the location and size as directed by the Contracting officer.
- b. Demonstrate the proposed range of color, texture, thickness, insulation, and workmanship.
- c. Obtain Contracting Officer's written approval of mock-up before starting fabrication of work.
- d. Maintain mock-up installation(s) during construction as a standard for judging the completed work by protecting them from weather and construction activities.
- e. When directed, demolish and remove mock-up from the site.

#### 1.2.2 Component Requirements and Tests

The components of the system shall meet the performance requirements as verified by the tests listed below.

##### 1.2.2.1 Surface Burning Characteristics

Conduct ASTM E 84 test on samples consisting of insulation board, base coat, reinforcing fabric, and finish coat. Cure for 28 days. The flame spread index shall be 25 or less and the smoke developed index shall be 450 or less.

##### 1.2.2.2 Radiant Heat

The system shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 268 with no ignition during the 20-minute period.

##### 1.2.2.3 Impact Resistance

- a. Class PB Systems: Hemispherical Head Test; 28 day cured specimen of PB EIFS in accordance with EIMA TM 101.86. The test specimen shall exhibit no broken reinforcing fabric per EIMA TM 101.86 at an impact of 5.65-10.1 J.
- b. Impact Mass: Test 28 day cured specimen of PM EIFS in accordance with ASTM E 695. The test specimen shall exhibit no cracking or denting after twelve impacts by 13.6 kg lead shot mass from 150 to 1800 mm drop heights in 150 mm intervals.

#### 1.2.3 Sub-Component Requirements and Tests

Unless otherwise stated, the test specimen shall consist of reinforcement, base coat, and finish coat applied in accordance with manufacturer's

printed recommendations to the insulation board to be used on the building.

For mildew resistance, only the finish coat is applied onto glass slides for testing. These specimen shall be suitably sized for the apparatus used and be allowed to cure for a minimum of 28 days prior to testing.

#### 1.2.3.1 Abrasion Resistance

Test in accordance with ASTM D 968, Method A. Test a minimum of two specimen. After testing, the specimens shall show only very slight smoothing, with no loss of film integrity after 500 liters of water.

#### 1.2.3.2 Accelerated Weathering

Test in accordance with ASTM G 23, Method 1. After 2000 hours specimens shall exhibit no visible cracking, flaking, peeling, blistering, yellowing, fading, or other such deterioration.

#### 1.2.3.3 Mildew/Fungus Resistance

Test in accordance with ASTM D 3273. The specimen shall consist of the finish coat material, applied to clean 75 mm by 100 mm glass slides and shall be allowed to cure for 28 days. After 28 days of exposure, the specimen shall not show any growth.

#### 1.2.3.4 Salt Spray Resistance

Test in accordance with ASTM B 117. The specimen shall be a minimum of 100 mm by 150 mm and shall be tested for 300 hours. After exposure, the specimen shall exhibit no observable deterioration, such as chalking, fading, or rust staining.

#### 1.2.3.5 Water Resistance

Test in accordance with ASTM D 2247. The specimen shall be a minimum of 100 mm by 150 mm. After 14 days, the specimen shall exhibit no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, blistering, peeling, or delamination.

#### 1.2.3.6 Absorption-Freeze/Thaw

Class PB systems shall be tested in accordance with EIMA TM 101.01 for 60 cycles of freezing and thawing. No cracking, checking, or splitting, and negligible weight gain. Class PM systems shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C 67 for 50 cycles of freezing and thawing. After testing, the specimens shall exhibit no cracking or checking, and have negligible weight gain.

#### 1.2.3.7 Sample Boards

Unless otherwise stated, provide sample EIFS Component 300 by 600 mm (, on sheathing board, including finish color and texture, typical joints and sealant. If more than one color, finish, or pattern is used, provide one sample for each. The test specimen shall consist of reinforcement, base coat, and finish coat applied in accordance with manufacturer's printed recommendations to the insulation board to be used on the building.

#### 1.2.4 Moisture Analysis

Perform a job specific vapor transmission analysis based on project specific climate and specified wall components and materials. Indicate the temperatures and relative humidities for the inside and outside of the building; a complete listing of the building components, their thickness, thermal resistance and permeance, as well as building location and use. If a mathematical model was used for the analysis, include the name of the model and the supplier/developer.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Submit the following in accordance with Section 01330, "Submittal Procedures."

##### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Shop drawings; G, RE

Show wall layout, construction and expansion joints, decorative grooves, layout of sheathing board, thermal insulation board, and reinforcement mesh and strip reinforcing fabric; joint and flashing details; details at wall penetrations; types and location of fasteners; details at windows and doors; and details at base, , , , .

##### SD-03 Product Data; G, RE

Thermal insulation

Mechanical Fasteners

Accessories

Base coat

Portland cement

Reinforcing fabric

Finish coat

Joint Sealant

Primer

Bond breaker

Backer Rod

Insulation Board

Warranty

Include joint and other details, such as end conditions, corners, windows, parapet. Include shelf life and recommended cleaning solvents in data for sealants. Include material safety data sheets (MSDS) for all components of the EIFS. The MSDS shall be available at the job site.

SD-04 Samples

Sample Boards; G, EC

Color and Texture

Mock-up Installation of EIFS; G, RE

SD-05 Design Data; G, RE

Wind load Calculations

Moisture analysis Calculations

SD-06 Test Reports; G, RE

Abrasion resistance

Accelerated weathering

Impact resistance

Mildew/Fungus resistance

Salt spray resistance

Water vapor transmission

Absorption-freeze-thaw

Flame spread

Water penetration

Water resistance

Full scale or intermediate scale fire test

Flame spread

Surface Burning Characteristics

Radiant heat

substrate

Wind load

SD-07 Certificates; G, RE

Qualifications of EIFS Manufacturer

Qualification of EIFS Installer

Qualification of Sealant Applicator

Certify that EIFS installer meets requirements specified under paragraph "Qualification of Installer," and that sealant applicator is approved by the EIFS Manufacturer.

Qualifications of Third Party Inspector; G, RE

Submit evidence that third party inspector has current certification from the Exterior Design Institute or equal inspector certification as inspector for the installation of EIFS.

Inspection Check List; G, RE

Submit filled-out inspection check list as required in paragraph "Quality Control," certifying that the installation of critical items meets the requirements of this specification.

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Installation; G, RE

Manufacturer's standard printed instructions for the installation of the EIFS. Include requirements for condition and preparation of substrate, installation of EIFS, and requirements for sealants and sealing.

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

EIFS; G, RE

Include detailed finish repair procedures and information regarding compatibility of sealants with base and finish coatings.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Qualifications of EIFS Manufacturer

The EIFS shall be the product of a manufacturer who has been in the practice of manufacturing and designing EIFS for a period of not less than 3 years, and has been involved in at least five projects similar to this project in size, scope, and complexity, in the same or a similar climate as this project.

1.4.2 Qualification of EIFS Installer

The EIFS Installer shall be trained and approved by the EIFS manufacturer to install the system and shall have successfully installed at least five

projects at or near the size and complexity of this project. The contractor shall employ qualified workers trained and experienced in installing the manufacturer's EIFS.

#### 1.4.3 Qualification of Sealant Applicator

The sealant applicator shall be experienced and competent in the installation of high performance industrial and commercial sealants and shall have successfully installed at least five projects at or near the size and complexity of this project.

#### 1.4.4 Insulation Board-

Insulation Board shall be approved and labeled under third party quality program as required by applicable building code.

#### 1.4.5 Pre-Installation Conference

After approval of submittals and before commencing any work on the EIFS , including installation of any sheathing board, insulation, and associated work, the Contracting Officer will hold a pre-installation conference to review:

- a. Drawings, specifications, and samples;
- b. Procedure for on site inspection and acceptance of EIFS substrate and pertinent details (for example, mock-up installation);
- c. Contractor's plan for coordination of work of the various trades involved in providing EIF system and other components;
- d. Inspection procedures; and
- e. Safety requirements.

Pre-installation conference shall be attended by the Contractor, EIFS Q.C.

Specialist (EIFS Inspector), and all personnel directly responsible for installation of the EIF system, including sealant applicator, and personnel responsible for related work, such as flashing and sheet metal, windows and doors, and a representative of the EIFS manufacturer. Before beginning EIFS work, the contractor shall confirm in writing the resolution of conflicts among those attending the preinstallation conference.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Deliver materials to job site in original unopened packages, marked with manufacturer's name, brand name, and description of contents. Store materials off the ground and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations in a clean, dry, well-ventilated area. Protect stored materials from rain, sunlight, and excessive heat. Keep coating materials which would be damaged by freezing at a temperature not less than 4 degrees C. Do not expose insulation board to flame or other ignition sources.

#### 1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- a. Do not prepare materials or apply EIFS during inclement weather unless appropriate protection is provided. Protect installed materials from inclement weather until they are dry.
- b. Apply sealants and wet materials only at ambient temperatures of 4 degrees C or above and rising, unless supplemental heat is provided. The system shall be protected from inclement weather and to maintain this temperature for a minimum of 24 hours after installation.
- c. Do not leave insulation board exposed to sunlight after installation.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

Furnish manufacturer's standard warranty for the EIFS. Warranty shall run directly to Government and cover a period of not less than 5 years from date Government accepted the work.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 COMPATIBILITY

Provide all materials compatible with each other and with the substrate, and as recommended by EIFS manufacturer.

##### 2.2 SHEATHING BOARD

###### 2.2.1 DELETED

###### 2.2.2 Glass Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board (DensGlass Gold Exterior Guard)

- a. Conform to ASTM C 1177/C 1177M.
- b. Nail Pull Resistance: No less than 534 N ( when tested in accordance with ASTM C 473.
- c. Mildew/Fungus Resistance: 35 days: No growth when tested in accordance with ASTM D 3273.
- d. Thickness no less than 13 mm.

##### 2.3 MECHANICAL FASTENERS

Corrosion resistant and as approved by EIFS manufacturer. Select fastener type and pattern based on applicable wind loads and substrate into which fastener will be attached, to provide the necessary pull-out, tensile, and shear strengths.

##### 2.4 THERMAL INSULATION

#### 2.4.1 Manufacturer's Recommendations

Provide only thermal insulation recommended by the EIFS manufacturer for the type of application intended.

#### 2.4.2 Insulation Board

Insulation board shall be standard product of manufacturer and shall be compatible with other systems components. Boards shall be factory marked individually with the manufacturer's name or trade mark, the material specification number, the R-value at 24 degree C, and thickness. No layer of insulation shall be less than 20 mm thick. The maximum thickness of all layers shall not exceed 102 mm. Insulation Board shall be certified as aged, in block form, prior to cutting and shipping, a minimum of 6 weeks by air drying, or equivalent.

- a. Thermal resistance: As indicated
- b. Insulating material: ASTM C 578 Type I or IV, as recommended by the EIFS manufacturer and treated to be compatible with other EIFS components. Age insulation by air drying a minimum of 6 weeks prior to cutting and shipping.

#### 2.5 BASE COAT

Manufacturer's standard product and compatible with other systems components.

#### 2.6 PORTLAND CEMENT

Conform to ASTM C 150, Type I or II as required, fresh and free of lumps, and approved by the systems manufacturer.

#### 2.7 REINFORCING FABRIC

Reinforcing fabric mesh shall be alkali-resistant, balanced, open weave, glass fiber fabric made from twisted multi-end strands specifically treated for compatibility with the other system materials, and comply with EIMA TM 105.01 and as recommended by EIFS manufacturer.

#### 2.8 FINISH COAT

Manufacturer's standard product conforming to the requirements in the paragraph on Sub-Component Requirements and Tests. For color consistency, use materials from the same batch or lot number.

#### 2.9 PRIMER

Non-staining, quick-drying type recommended by sealant manufacturer and EIFS manufacturer.

#### 2.10 ACCESSORIES

Conform to recommendations of EIFS manufacturer, including trim, edging,

anchors, expansion joints. All metal items and fasteners to be corrosion resistant.

#### 2.11 JOINT SEALANT

Non-staining, quick-drying type meeting ASTM C 920, Class 25, compatible with the finish system type and grade, and recommended by both the sealant manufacturer and EIFS manufacturer.

#### 2.12 BOND BREAKER

As required by EIFS manufacturer and recommended by sealant manufacturer and EIFS manufacturer.

#### 2.13 BACKER ROD

Closed cell polyethylene free from oil or other staining elements and as recommended by sealant manufacturer and EIFS manufacturer. Do not use absorptive materials as backer rod. The backer rod should be sized 25 percent larger than the width of the joint.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

Examine substrate and existing conditions to determine that the EIFS can be installed as required by the EIFS manufacturer and that all work related to the EIFS is properly coordinated. Surface shall be sound and free of oil, loose materials or protrusions which will interfere with the system installation. If deficiencies are found, notify the Contracting Officer and do not proceed with installation until the deficiencies are corrected. The substrate shall be plane, with no deviation greater than 6 mm when tested with a 3 m straightedge. Determine flatness, plumbness, and any other conditions for conformance to manufacturer's instructions.

#### 3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

Prepare existing surfaces for application of the EIFS to meet flatness tolerances and surface preparation according to manufacturer's installation instructions. Provide clean surfaces free of oil and loose material without protrusions adversely affecting the installation of the insulation board. For adhesively attached EIFS, existing deteriorated paint must be removed. Due to substrate conditions or as recommended by the system manufacturer, a primer may be required. Apply the primer to existing surfaces as recommended by the manufacturer. Use masking tape to protect areas adjacent to the EIFS to prevent base or finish coat to be applied to areas not intended to be covered with the EIFS. The contractor shall not proceed with the installation until all noted deficiencies of the substrate are corrected.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

Install EIFS as indicated, comply with manufacturer's instructions except as otherwise specified, and in accordance with the shop drawings. EIFS shall

be installed only by an applicator trained and approved by the EIFS manufacturer. Specifically, include all manufacturer recommended provisions regarding flashing and treatment of wall penetrations.

### 3.3.1 Sheathing Board

Edges and ends of boards shall be butted snugly with vertical joints staggered to provide full and even support for the insulation. Do not align sheathing board joints with wall openings. Provide support at both vertical and horizontal joints. Attach sheathing board to metal studs with self-tapping drywall screws. Place fasteners sufficiently close to support imposed loads, but not more than:

- a. 200 mm apart on each supporting stud

Space fasteners more closely when required for negative wind load resistance.

### 3.3.2 Insulation Board

Unless otherwise specified by the system manufacturer, place the long edge horizontally from level base line. Stagger vertical joints and interlock at corners. Butt joints tightly. Provide flush surfaces at joints. Offset insulation board joints from joints in sheathing by at least 200 mm. Use L-shaped insulation board pieces at corners of openings. Joints of insulation shall be butted tightly. Surfaces of adjacent insulation boards shall be flush at joints. Gaps greater than 1.6 mm between the insulation boards shall be filled with slivers of insulation. Uneven board surfaces with irregularities projecting more than 1.6 mm shall be rasped in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions to produce an even surface. Attach insulation board as recommended by manufacturer. The adhered insulation board shall be allowed to remain undisturbed for 24 hours prior to proceeding with the installation of the base coat/reinforcing mesh, or longer if necessary for the adhesive to dry. However, do not leave insulation board exposed longer than recommended by insulation manufacturer.

#### 3.3.2.1 Mechanically Fastened Insulation Boards

Fasten with manufacturer's standard corrosion resistant anchors, spaced as recommended by manufacturer, but not more than 600 mm horizontally and vertically.

### 3.3.3 Base Coat and Reinforcing Fabric Mesh,

#### 3.3.3.1 Class PB Systems

Mix base coat in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and apply to insulated wall surfaces to the thickness specified by the system manufacturer and provide any other reinforcement recommended by EIFS manufacturer. Trowel the reinforcing fabric mesh into the wet base coat material. Fully embed the mesh in the base coat. When properly worked-in, the pattern of the reinforcing fabric mesh shall not be visible. Provide diagonal reinforcement at opening corners. Back-wrap all terminations of the EIFS. Overlap the reinforcing fabric mesh a minimum of 50 mm on

previously installed mesh, or butted, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Allow the adhered insulation board to dry for 24 hours, or longer if necessary, prior to proceeding with the installation of the base coat/reinforcing fabric mesh. Install reinforcing fabric in accordance with and manufacturer's instructions.

#### 3.3.4 Finish Coat

Apply and level finish coat in one operation. Obtain final texture by trowels, floats, or by spray application as necessary to achieve the required finish matching approved sample. Apply the finish coat to the dry base coat maintaining a wet edge at all times to obtain a uniform appearance. The thickness of the finish coat shall be in accordance with the system manufacturer's current published instructions. Apply finish coat so that it does not cover surfaces to which joint sealants are to be applied. The base coat/reinforcing mesh must be allowed to dry a minimum of 24 hours prior to the application of the finish coat. Surface irregularities in the base coat, such as trowel marks, board lines, reinforcing mesh laps, etc., shall be corrected prior to application of the finish coat.

#### 3.4 JOINT SEALING

Seal EIFS at openings as recommended by the system manufacturer. Apply sealant only to the base coat. Do not apply sealant to the finish coat.

##### 3.4.1 Surface Preparation, Backer Rod, and Primer

Immediately prior to application, remove loose matter from joint. Ensure that joint is dry and free of paint, finish coat, or other foreign matter. Install backer rod. Apply primer as required by sealant and EIFS manufacturer. Check that joint width is as shown on drawings but in no case shall it be less than 13 mm for perimeter seals and 20 mm for expansion joints. The width shall not be less than 4 times the anticipated movement. Check sealant manufacturer's recommendations regarding proper width to depth ratio.

##### 3.4.2 Sealant

Apply sealant in accordance with sealant manufacturer's instructions with gun having nozzle that fits joint width. Do not use sealant that has exceeded shelf life or can not be discharged in a continuous flow. Completely fill the joint solidly with sealant without air pockets so that full contact is made with both sides of the joint. Tool sealant with a round instrument that provides a concave profile and a uniformly smooth and wrinkle free sealant surface. Do not wet tool the joint with soap, water, or any other liquid tooling aid. Do not apply sealant until all EIFS coatings are fully dry. During inclement weather, protect the joints until sealant application. Use particular caution in sealing joints between window and door frames and the EIFS wall and at all other wall penetrations. Clean all surfaces to remove excess sealant.

#### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Throughout the installation, the contractor shall establish and maintain an inspection procedure to assure compliance of the installed EIFS with contract requirements. Work not in compliance shall be removed and replaced or corrected in an approved manner. The inspection procedures, from acceptance of deliveries through installation of sealants and final acceptance shall be performed by qualified inspector trained by the manufacturer. No work on the EIFS shall be performed unless the inspector is present at the job site.

3.5.1 Inspection Check List

During the installation and at the completion of installation, perform inspections covering at the minimum all applicable items enumerated on the attached check list. The inspector shall initial and date all applicable items, sign the check list, and submit it to the Contracting Officer at the completion of the EIFS erection.

CHECK LIST

<u>Item</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Appr'd/Date</u>
a.	Materials are handled and stored correctly.	_____
b.	Environmental conditions are within specified limits, including temperature not below 4 degrees C (40 degrees F), and the work is protected from the elements as required.	_____
c.	Preparation and installation is performed by qualified personnel using the correct tools.	_____
d.	Adjacent areas to which EIFS is not to be applied (such as on window and door frames) are protected with masking tape, plastic films, drop cloths, etc. to prevent accidental application of EIFS materials.	_____
e.	Control, expansion and aesthetic joints are installed as indicated or recommended. Accessories are properly installed.	_____
f.	Substrate is in-plane, properly attached, clean, dry, and free of contaminants. Concrete substrate is free of efflorescence.	_____
g.	Materials are mixed thoroughly and in proper proportions.	_____
h.	Adhesive is applied in sufficient quantity with proper-size notched trowel.	_____
i.	Mechanical attachments have proper spacing, layout and fastener depth.	_____
j.	Insulation boards are tightly abutted, in running bond pattern, with joints staggered with the sheathing, board	_____

CHECK LIST

<u>Item</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Appr'd/Date</u>
	corners interlocked, L-shaped boards around openings, edges free of adhesive, and provision for joints. Gaps are filled and surfaces rasped.	
k.	Insulation adhesive must be allowed to dry (a minimum of 24-hours) prior to the application of the finish coat.	=====
l.	Reinforcing fabric mesh is properly back-wrapped at terminations.	=====
m.	Reinforcing fabric mesh is fully embedded and properly placed. Corners are reinforced. Openings are diagonally reinforced. Mesh overlaps minimum 65 mm (2-1/2 inches).	=====
n.	Base coat thickness is within specified limits.	=====
o.	The base coat/reinforcing fabric mesh must be allowed to dry (a minimum of 24-hours) prior to the application of the finish coat.	=====
p.	Finish coat is applied with sufficient number of personnel and stopped at suitable points. Floats and methods of texturing are uniform.	=====
q.	All Flashings are properly installed.	=====
r.	All joints are properly sealed in their entire length at time and under environmental conditions as specified by the manufacturer.	=====
s.	All scaffolding, equipment, materials, debris and temporary protection are removed from site upon completion.	=====
Name of Inspector: _____ Signed: _____		Date: _____

3.6 CLEANUP

Upon completion, remove all scaffolding, equipment, materials and debris from site. Remove all temporary protection installed to facilitate installation of EIFS.

-- End of Section --

## SECTION 09250

GYPSUM BOARD  
11/01

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

## AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI A108.11 (1992) Interior Installation of  
Cementitious Backer Units

ANSI A118.9 (1992) Cementitious Backer Units

## AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS (ASTM)

ASTM C 36/C 36M (1999) Gypsum Wallboard

ASTM C 79/C 79M (2001) Standard Specification for Treated  
Core and Nontreated Core Gypsum Sheathing  
Board

ASTM C 442/C 442M (1999; Rev. A) Gypsum Backing Board and  
Coreboard

ASTM C 475 (1994) Joint Compound and Joint Tape for  
Finishing Gypsum Board

ASTM C 514 (1996) Nails for the Application of Gypsum  
Board

ASTM C 630/C 630M (2001) Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board

ASTM C 840 (2001) Application and Finishing of Gypsum  
Board

ASTM C 954 (2000) Steel Drill Screws for the  
Application of Gypsum Board or Metal  
Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033  
in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in  
Thickness

ASTM C 1002 (2000) Steel Drill Screws for the

Application of Gypsum Panel Products or  
Metal Plaster Bases

ASTM C 1047	(1999) Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base
ASTM C 1177/C 1177M	(1999) Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for use as Sheathing
ASTM C 1178/C 1178M	(1999) Glass Mat Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board
ASTM C 1396/C 1396M	(2000) Standard Specification for Gypsum Board
ASTM D 226	(1997) Standard Specification for Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
ASTM D 412	(1998) Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Rubbers and Thermoplastic Elastomers-Tension
ASTM D 624	(2000) Standard Test Method for Tear Strength of Conventional Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers
ASTM D 1037	(1999) Standard Test Methods for Evaluating Properties of Wood-Base Fiber and Particle Panel Materials
ASTM D 1149	(1999) Standard Test Method for Rubber Deterioration-Surface Ozone Cracking in a Chamber
ASTM D 5420	(1998) Standard Test Method for Impact Resistance of Flat, Rigid Plastic Specimen by Means of a Striker Impacted by a Falling Weight (Gardner Impact)
ASTM E 84	(2001) Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM E 695	(1997) Standard Method for Measure Relative Resistance of Wall, Floor and Roof Construction to Impact Loads

GYPSUM ASSOCIATION (GA)

GA 214	(1996) Recommended Levels of Gypsum Board
--------	---

Finish

- GA 216 (2000) Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board
- GA 253 (1999) Application of Gypsum Sheathing
- GA 600 (2000) Fire Resistance and Sound Control Design Manual

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

- UL Fire Resist Dir (2000) Fire Resistance Directory

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Submit the following in accordance with Section 01330, "Submittal Procedures."

SD-03 Product Data; G, RE

- Cementitious backer units
- Glass Mat Water-Resistant Gypsum Tile Backing Board
- Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board
- Glass Mat Covered or Reinforced Gypsum Sheathing
- Glass Mat Covered or Reinforced Gypsum Sheathing Sealant
- Impact Resistant Gypsum Board
- Accessories

Submit for each type of gypsum board and for cementitious backer units.

SD-04 Samples

- Predecorated gypsum board; G, RE

Submit for each color and pattern of predecorated gypsum board. Where colors are not indicated, submit color selection samples of not less than eight of the manufacturer's standard colors.

SD-07 Certificates

- Asbestos Free Materials; G, RE

Certify that gypsum board types, gypsum backing board types, cementitious backer units, and joint treating materials do not

contain asbestos.

### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

#### 1.3.1 Delivery

Deliver materials in the original packages, containers, or bundles with each bearing the brand name, applicable standard designation, and name of manufacturer, or supplier.

#### 1.3.2 Storage

Keep materials dry by storing inside a sheltered building. Where necessary to store gypsum board and cementitious backer units outside, store off the ground, properly supported on a level platform, and protected from direct exposure to rain, snow, sunlight, and other extreme weather conditions. Provide adequate ventilation to prevent condensation.

#### 1.3.3 Handling

Neatly stack gypsum board and cementitious backer units flat to prevent sagging or damage to the edges, ends, and surfaces.

### 1.4 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

#### 1.4.1 Temperature

Maintain a uniform temperature of not less than 10 degrees C in the structure for at least 48 hours prior to, during, and following the application of gypsum board, cementitious backer units, and joint treatment materials, or the bonding of adhesives.

#### 1.4.2 Exposure to Weather

Protect gypsum board and cementitious backer unit products from direct exposure to rain, snow, sunlight, and other extreme weather conditions.

### 1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer shall specialize in manufacturing the types of material specified and shall have a minimum of 5 years of documented successful experience. Installer shall specialize in the type of gypsum board work required and shall have a minimum of 3 years of documented successful experience.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

Conform to specifications, standards and requirements specified herein. Provide gypsum board types, gypsum backing board types, cementitious backing units, and joint treating materials manufactured from asbestos free materials only.

2.1.1 Gypsum Board

ASTM C 36/C 36M and ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

2.1.1.1 Regular

1200 mm wide, 15.9 mm thick, tapered edges.

2.1.1.2 Type X (Special Fire-Resistant)

1200 mm wide, 12.7 and 15.9 mm thick, tapered edges.

2.1.2 Gypsum Backing Board

ASTM C 442/C 442M, gypsum backing board shall be used as a base in a multilayer system.

2.1.2.1 Regular

1200 mm wide, 15.9 mm thick, square edges.

2.1.2.2 Type X (Special Fire-Resistant)

1200 mm wide, 12.7 mm thick, square edges.

2.1.3 Regular Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board

ASTM C 630/C 630M

2.1.3.1 Regular

1200 mm wide, 12.7 mm thick, tapered edges.

2.1.4 Glass Mat Water-Resistant Gypsum Tile Backing Board

ASTM C 1178/C 1178M

2.1.4.1 Regular

1200 mm wide, 15.9 mm thick, square edges.

2.1.5 DELETED

2.1.5.1 DELETED

2.1.6 Impact Resistant Gypsum Board

1200 mm wide, 15.9 mm thick, tapered edges.

Reinforced gypsum panel with imbedded fiber mesh or lexan backing testing in accordance with the following tests. Provide fasteners that meet manufacturer requirements and specifications stated within this section.

Impact resistant gypsum board, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84, shall have a flame spread rating of 15 for face and 50 or less for back or less and a smoke developed rating of 50 or less.

#### 2.1.6.1 Structural Failure Test

ASTM E 695 or ASTM D 2394 for structural failure (drop penetration). ASTM E 695 using a 27.2 kg sand filled leather bag, resisting no less than 407 N-m cumulative impact energy before failure or ASTM D 2394 using 139.7 mm hemispherical projectile resisting no less than 357 N-m before failure. Test specimen stud spacing shall be 406 mm or greater on center.

#### 2.1.6.2 Indentation Test

ASTM D 5420 or ASTM D 1037 for indentation resistance. ASTM D 5420 using a .907 kg weight with a 16 mm hemispherical impacting head dropped once 915 mm creating not more than 3.5 mm indentation or ASTM D 1037 using no less than 213 kg weight applied to the 11.13 mm diameter ball to create not more than a 0.5 mm indentation depth.

#### 2.1.7 Abuse-Resistant Gypsum Board

A gypsum core wall panel with additives to enhance surface indentation resistance, and impact resistance of the core and surfaced with abrasion resistant paper on front and long edges with heavy liner paper bonded to the back side; and complying with ASTM C 36/C 1396, Type X (Hi-Abuse Brand Wallboard). 1200 mm wide, 15.9 mm thick, tapered edges. Provide fasteners that meet manufacturer requirements.

##### 2.1.7.1 Impact Resistance

No failure after 100 impacts when tested in accordance with ASTM E 695, modified.

##### 2.1.7.2 Indentation Resistance

Not less than the following loads to produce the indicated depth of surface indentation when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1037, modified:

- a. 0.100 in.: 232 lbs.
- b. 0.200 in.: 469 lbs.

##### 2.1.7.3 3M Surface Abrasion Resistance

Not greater than the following depths when tested using the indicated number of cycles in accordance with ASTM D 4977, modified:

- a. 50: 0.000 in.
- b. 100: 0.000 in.
- c. 150: 0.001 in.
- c. 200: 0.001 in.
- d. 250: 0.001 in.

##### 2.1.7.4 Taber Surface Abrasion Resistance

Not greater than the following depths when tested using the indicated number of cycles in accordance with ASTM D 4060, modified:

- a. 25: 0.002 in.
- a. 50: 0.004 in.

- b. 75: 0.007 in.
- c. 100: 0.009 in.
- d. 125: 0.010 in.

2.1.7.5 Impact/Penetration Resistance Rating

Not less than 36 ft.-lbs. When tested in accordance with ASTM D 2394, modified.

2.1.8 Cementitious Backer Units

ANSI A118.9.

2.1.9 Joint Treatment Materials

ASTM C 475.

2.1.9.1 Embedding Compound

Specifically formulated and manufactured for use in embedding tape at gypsum board joints and compatible with tape, substrate and fasteners.

2.1.9.2 Finishing or Topping Compound

Specifically formulated and manufactured for use as a finishing compound.

2.1.9.3 All-Purpose Compound

Specifically formulated and manufactured to serve as both a taping and a finishing compound and compatible with tape, substrate and fasteners.

2.1.9.4 Setting or Hardening Type Compound

Specifically formulated and manufactured for use with fiber glass mesh tape.

2.1.9.5 Joint Tape

Cross-laminated, tapered edge, reinforced paper, or fiber glass mesh tape recommended by the manufacturer.

2.1.10 Fasteners

2.1.10.1 Nails

ASTM C 514.

2.1.10.2 Screws

ASTM C 1002, Type "G", Type "S" or Type "W" steel drill screws for fastening gypsum board to gypsum board, wood framing members and steel framing members less than 0.84 mm thick. ASTM C 954 steel drill screws for fastening gypsum board to steel framing members 0.84 to 2.84 mm thick. Provide cementitious backer unit screws with a polymer coating.

2.1.10.3 Staples

1.5 mm thick flattened galvanized wire staples with 11.1 mm wide crown outside measurement and divergent point for base ply of two-ply gypsum board application. Use as follows:

<u>Length of Legs (mm)</u>	<u>Thickness of Gypsum Board (mm)</u>
28.6	12.7
31.8	15.9

2.1.11 Adhesives

Do not use adhesive containing benzene, carbon tetrachloride, or trichloroethylene.

2.1.11.1 Adhesive for Fastening Gypsum Board to Metal Framing

Type recommended by gypsum board manufacturer.

2.1.11.2 [Enter Appropriate Subpart Title Here] 2.1.11.3 Adhesive for Laminating

For laminating two-ply gypsum board systems , provide adhesive recommended by gypsum board manufacturer.

2.1.12 Gypsum Studs

25 mm minimum high and 150 mm minimum width. Studs may be of 25 mm thick gypsum board or multilayers laminated to required thickness. Conform to ASTM C 36/C 36M or ASTM C 442/C 442M for material.

2.1.13 Accessories

ASTM C 1047. Fabricate from corrosion protected steel or plastic designed for intended use. Accessories manufactured with paper flanges are not acceptable. Flanges shall be free of dirt, grease, and other materials that may adversely affect bond of joint treatment. Provide prefinished or job decorated materials.

2.1.14 DELETED

2.1.15 Water

Clean, fresh, and potable.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

3.1.1 Framing and Furring

Verify that framing and furring are securely attached and of sizes and spacing to provide a suitable substrate to receive gypsum board and cementitious backer units. Verify that all blocking, headers and supports are in place to support plumbing fixtures and to receive soap dishes, grab bars, towel racks, and similar items. Do not proceed with work until framing and furring are acceptable for application of gypsum board and cementitious backer units.

### 3.1.2 Gypsum Board and Framing

Verify that surfaces of gypsum board and framing to be bonded with an adhesive are free of dust, dirt, grease, and any other foreign matter. Do not proceed with work until surfaces are acceptable for application of gypsum board with adhesive.

### 3.1.3 Concrete Walls

Verify that surfaces of concrete walls to receive gypsum board applied with adhesive are dry, free of dust, oil, form release agents, protrusions and voids, and any other foreign matter. Do not proceed with work until surfaces are acceptable for application of gypsum board with adhesive.

## 3.2 APPLICATION OF GYPSUM BOARD

Apply gypsum board to framing and furring members in accordance with ASTM C 840 or GA 216 and the requirements specified herein. Apply gypsum board with separate panels in moderate contact; do not force in place. Stagger end joints of adjoining panels. Neatly fit abutting end and edge joints. Use gypsum board of maximum practical length. Cut out gypsum board as required to make neat close joints around openings. In vertical application of gypsum board, provide panels in lengths required to reach full height of vertical surfaces in one continuous piece. Surfaces of gypsum board and substrate members may be bonded together with an adhesive, except where prohibited by fire rating(s). Treat edges of cutouts for plumbing pipes, screwheads, and joints with water-resistant compound as recommended by the gypsum board manufacturer. Provide type of gypsum board for use in each system specified herein as indicated.

### 3.2.1 Adhesive Application to Concrete Walls

Apply in accordance with ASTM C 840, System VI or GA 216.

### 3.2.2 Application of Gypsum Board to Steel Framing and Furring

Apply in accordance with ASTM C 840, System VIII or GA 216.

### 3.2.3 Arches and Bending Radii

Apply gypsum board in accordance with ASTM C 840, System IX or GA 216.

### 3.2.4 Gypsum Board for Wall Tile or Tile Base Applied with Adhesive

Apply glass matt water-resistant gypsum tile backing board or water-resistant gypsum backing board in accordance with ASTM C 840, System

X or GA 216 as indicated in Room Finish Schedules on the contract drawings.

3.2.5 DELETED

3.2.6 DELETED

3.2.7 Floating Interior Angles

Locate the attachment fasteners adjacent to ceiling and wall intersections in accordance with ASTM C 840, System XII or GA 216, for single-ply and two-ply applications of gypsum board to wood framing.

3.2.8 Control Joints

Install expansion and contraction joints in ceilings and walls in accordance with ASTM C 840, System XIII or GA 216, unless indicated otherwise. Control joints between studs in fire-rated construction shall be filled with firesafing insulation to match the fire-rating of construction.

3.2.9 Application of Impact Resistant and Abuse-Resistant Gypsum Board

Apply in accordance with applicable system of ASTM C 840 as specified or GA 216. Follow manufacturers written instructions on how to cut, drill and attach board.

3.3 APPLICATION OF CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNITS

3.3.1 Application

In wet areas (tubs, shower enclosures, saunas, steam rooms, gang shower rooms), apply cementitious backer units in accordance with ANSI A108.11. A 7.6 kg asphalt impregnated, continuous felt paper membrane shall be placed behind cementitious backer units, between backer units and studs or base layer of gypsum board. Membrane shall be placed with a minimum 150 mm overlap of sheets laid shingle style.

3.3.2 Joint Treatment

ANSI A108.11.

3.4 FINISHING OF GYPSUM BOARD

Tape and finish gypsum board in accordance with ASTM C 840, GA 214 and GA 216. Plenum areas above ceilings shall be finished to Level 1 in accordance with GA 214. Water resistant gypsum backing board, ASTM C 630/C 630M, to receive ceramic tile shall be finished to Level 2 in accordance with GA 214. Walls and ceilings to receive a heavy-grade wall covering or heave textured finish before painting shall be finished to Level 3 in accordance with GA 214. Walls and ceilings without critical lighting to

receive flat paints, light textures, or wall coverings shall be finished to Level 4 in accordance with GA 214. Unless otherwise specified, all gypsum board walls, partitions and ceilings shall be finished to Level 5 in accordance with GA 214. Provide joint, fastener depression, and corner treatment. Do not use fiber glass mesh tape with conventional drying type joint compounds; use setting or hardening type compounds only. Provide treatment for water-resistant gypsum board as recommended by the gypsum board manufacturer.

#### 3.4.1 Uniform Surface

Wherever gypsum board is to receive eggshell, semigloss or gloss paint finish, or where severe, up or down lighting conditions occur, finish gypsum wall surface in accordance to GA 214 Level 5. In accordance with GA 214 Level 5, apply a thin skim coat of joint compound to the entire gypsum board surface, after the two-coat joint and fastener treatment is complete and dry.

#### 3.5 SEALING

Seal openings around pipes, fixtures, and other items projecting through gypsum board and cementitious backer units as specified in Section 07900a "Joint Sealing." Apply material with exposed surface flush with gypsum board or cementitious backer units.

##### 3.5.1 Sealing for Glass Mat or Reinforced Gypsum Board Sheathing

Apply silicone sealant in a 9.5 mm bead to all joints and trowel flat. Apply enough of the same sealant to all fasteners penetrating through the glass mat gypsum board surface to completely cover the penetration when troweled flat. Construction and materials shall not be placed behind sheathing until a visual inspection of sealed joints during daylight hours has been completed by Contracting Officer.

#### 3.6 FIRE-RESISTANT ASSEMBLIES

Wherever fire-rated construction is indicated, provide materials and application methods, including types and spacing of fasteners, wall and ceiling framing in accordance with the specifications contained in UL Fire Resist Dir for the Design Number(s) indicated, or GA 600 for the File Number(s) indicated. Joints of fire-rated gypsum board enclosures shall be closed and sealed in accordance with UL test requirements or GA requirements. Penetrations through rated partitions and ceilings shall be sealed tight in accordance with tested systems. Fire ratings shall be as indicated.

#### 3.7 PATCHING

Patch surface defects in gypsum board to a smooth, uniform appearance, ready to receive finish as specified.

-- End of Section --

## SECTION 15400A

## PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## AIR CONDITIONING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (ARI)

- ARI 1010 (1994) Self-Contained, Mechanically Refrigerated Drinking-Water Coolers
- ARI 700 (1999) Specifications for Fluorocarbon and Other Refrigerants

## AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

- ANSI Z21.10.1 (1998; Z21.10.1a; Z21.10.1b; Z21.10.1c) Gas Water Heaters Vol. I, Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings of 75,000 Btu Per Hour or Less
- ANSI Z21.10.3 (1998) Gas Water Heaters Vol.III, Storage Water Heaters With Input Ratings Above 75,000 Btu Per Hour, Circulating and Instantaneous Water Heaters
- ANSI Z21.22 (1999) Relief Valves and Automatic Gas Shutoff Devices for Hot Water Supply Systems

## AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS (ASTM)

- ASTM A 74 (1998) Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
- ASTM A 888 (1998e1) Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications
- ASTM B 306 (1999) Copper Drainage Tube (DWV)
- ASTM B 32 (1996) Solder Metal
- ASTM B 370 (1998) Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction

ASTM B 42	(1998) Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
ASTM B 43	(1998) Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes
ASTM B 813	(2000) Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering Applications of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube
ASTM B 88	(1999) Seamless Copper Water Tube
ASTM B 88M	(1999) Seamless Copper Water Tube (Metric)
ASTM C 564	(1997) Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
ASTM C 920	(1998) Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM D 2235	(1996a) Solvent Cement for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D 2564	(1996a) Solvent Cements for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems
ASTM D 2661	(1997ael) Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D 2665	(2000) Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D 2822	(1991; R 1997el) Asphalt Roof Cement
ASTM D 2855	(1996) Making Solvent-Cemented Joints with Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D 3138	(1995) Solvent Cements for Transition Joints Between Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) and Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Non-Pressure Piping Components
ASTM D 3139	(1998) Joints for Plastic Pressure Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM D 3212	(1996a) Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM D 3308	(1997) PTFE Resin Skived Tape
ASTM D 3311	(1994) Drain, Waste, and Vent (DWV) Plastic Fittings Patterns

ASTM E 1	(1998) ASTM Thermometers
ASTM F 1760	(1997) Coextruded Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Non-Pressure Plastic Pipe Having Reprocessed-Recycled Content
ASTM F 409	(1999a) Thermoplastic Accessible and Replaceable Plastic Tube and Tubular Fittings
ASTM F 477	(1999) Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe
ASTM F 493	(1997) Solvent Cements for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
ASTM F 628	(2000) Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe with a Cellular Core
ASTM F 891	(2000) Coextruded Poly (Vinyl chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe with a Cellular Core

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 34	(1997) Number Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants
ASHRAE 90.1	(1989; 90.1b; 90.1c; 90.1d; 90.1e; 90.1g; 90.1i; 90.1l-1995; 90.1m-1995; 90.1n-1997) Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SANITARY ENGINEERING (ASSE)

ASSE 1001	(1990) Pipe Applied Atmospheric Type Vacuum Breakers
ASSE 1002	(1986) Water Closet Flush Tank Ball Cocks
ASSE 1003	(1995) Water Pressure Reducing Valves for Domestic Water Supply Systems
ASSE 1005	(1986) Water Heater Drain Valves - 3/4-Inch Iron Pipe Size
ASSE 1011	(1995) Hose Connection Vacuum Breakers
ASSE 1012	(1995) Backflow Preventers with Intermediate Atmospheric Vent

ASSE 1013 (1999) Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow Preventers

ASSE 1018 (1986) Trap Seal Primer Valves Water Supply Fed

ASSE 1020 (1998) Pressure Vacuum Breaker Assembly (Recommended for Outdoor Usage)

ASSE 1037 (1990; Rev thru Mar 1990) Pressurized Flushing Devices (Flushometers) for Plumbing Fixtures

## AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION(AWWA)

AWWA B300 (1999) Hypochlorites

AWWA B301 (1992; Addenda B301a - 1999) Liquid Chlorine

AWWA C105 (1999) Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Pipe Systems

AWWA C203 (1997; Addenda C203a - 1999) Coal-Tar Protective Coatings and Linings for Steel Water Pipelines - Enamel and Tape - Hot-Applied

AWWA C606 (1997) Grooved and Shouldered Joints

AWWA C700 (1995) Cold-Water Meters - Displacement Type, Bronze Main Case

AWWA C701 (1988) Cold-Water Meters - Turbine Type, for Customer Service

AWWA D100 (1996) Welded Steel Tanks for Water Storage

AWWA EWW (1999) Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater

AWWA M20 (1973) Manual: Water Chlorination Principles and Practices

## AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A5.8 (1992) Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding

AWS B2.2 (1991) Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification

## ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME A112.1.2	(1991; R 1998) Air Gaps in Plumbing Systems
ASME A112.14.1	(1975; R 1998) Backwater Valves
ASME A112.18.1M	(1996) Plumbing Fixture Fittings
ASME A112.19.1M	(1994; R 1999) Enameled Cast Iron Plumbing Fixtures
ASME A112.19.2M	(1998) Vitreous China Plumbing Fixtures
ASME A112.19.3M	(1987; R 1996) Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures (Designed for Residential Use
ASME A112.21.1M	(1991; R 1998) Floor Drains
ASME A112.36.2M	(1991; R 1998) Cleanouts
ASME A112.6.1M	(1997) Supports for Off-the-Floor Plumbing Fixtures for Public Use
ASME B1.20.1	(1983; R 1992) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)
ASME B16.15	(1985; R 1994) Cast Bronze Threaded Fittings Classes 125 and 250
ASME B16.18	(1984; R 1994) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.21	(1992) Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges
ASME B16.22	(1995; B16.22a1998) Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.23	(1992; Errata Jan 1994) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings - DWV
ASME B16.24	(1991; R 1998) Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges, Class 150, 300, 400, 600, 900, 1500, and 2500, and Flanged Fittings, Class 150 and 300
ASME B16.29	(1994) Wrought Copper and Wrought Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings - DWV
ASME B16.34	(1997) Valves - Flanged, Threaded, and Welding End
ASME B31.5	(1992; B31.5a1994) Refrigeration Piping
ASME B40.1	(1991) Gauges - Pressure Indicating Dial Type - Elastic Element

ASME CSD-1 (1998) Controls and Safety Devices for Automatically Fired Boilers

CAST IRON SOIL PIPE INSTITUTE (CISPI)

CISPI 301 (1997) Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications

CISPI 310 (1997) Coupling for Use in Connection with Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications

CISPI HSN-85 (1985) Neoprene Rubber Gaskets for Hub and Spigot Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings

COPPER DEVELOPMENT ASSOCIATION (CDA)

CDA Tube Handbook (1995) Copper Tube Handbook

FOUNDATION FOR CROSS-CONNECTION CONTROL AND HYDRAULIC RESEARCH (FCCCHR)

FCCCHR-CCC (1993) Manual of Cross-Connection Control

HYDRAULIC INSTITUTE (HI)

HI 1.1-1.5 (1994) Centrifugal Pumps

INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF PLUMBING AND MECHANICAL OFFICIALS (IAPMO)

IAPMO Z124.5 (1997) Plastic Toilet (Water Closets) Seats

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

CABO A117.1 (1998) Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities

ICC Plumbing Code (2000) International Plumbing Code (IPA)

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-110 (1996) Ball Valves Threaded, Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends

MSS SP-58 (1993) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture

MSS SP-67 (1995) Butterfly Valves

MSS SP-69 (1996) Pipe Hangers and Supports -  
Selection and Application

MSS SP-70 (1998) Cast Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and  
Threaded Ends

MSS SP-71 (1997) Gray Iron Swing Check Valves,  
Flanges and Threaded Ends

MSS SP-72 (1999) Ball Valves with Flanged or  
Butt-Welding Ends for General Service

MSS SP-73 (1991; R 1996) Brazing Joints for Copper  
and Copper Alloy Pressure Fittings

MSS SP-78 (1998) Cast Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and  
Threaded Ends

MSS SP-80 (1997) Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check  
Valves

MSS SP-85 (1994) Cast Iron Globe & Angle Valves,  
Flanged and Threaded Ends

## NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 31 (1997; TIA 97-1) Installation of Oil  
Burning Equipment

NFPA 54 (1999) National Fuel Gas Code

NFPA 90A (1999) Installation of Air Conditioning  
and Ventilating Systems

## NSF INTERNATIONAL (NSF)

NSF 14 (1999) Plastics Piping Components and  
Related Materials

NSF 61 (1999) Drinking Water System Components -  
Health Effects (Sections 1-9)

## PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS ASSOCIATION (PPFA)

PPFA-01 (1998) Plastic Pipe in Fire Resistive  
Construction

## PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE INSTITUTE (PDI)

PDI WH 201 (1992) Water Hammer Arresters

## SOCIETY OF AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS INTERNATIONAL (SAE)

SAE J 1508 (1997) Hose Clamps

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

CID A-A-240 (Rev A; Canc. Notice 1) Shower Head, Ball Joint

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

10 CFR 430 Energy Conservation Program for Consumer Products

PL 93-523 (1974; Amended 1986) Safe Drinking Water Act

## 1.2 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Specified materials and equipment shall be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products. Specified equipment shall essentially duplicate equipment that has performed satisfactorily at least two years prior to bid opening.

## 1.3 ELECTRICAL WORK

Motors, motor controllers and motor efficiencies shall conform to the requirements of Section 16415A ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR. Electrical motor-driven equipment specified herein shall be provided complete with motors. Equipment shall be rated at 60 Hz, single phase, ac unless otherwise indicated. Where a motor controller is not provided in a motor-control center on the electrical drawings, a motor controller shall be provided. Motor controllers shall be provided complete with properly sized thermal-overload protection in each ungrounded conductor, auxiliary contact, and other equipment, at the specified capacity, and including an allowable service factor.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Plumbing System; G, RE.  
Detail drawings consisting of illustrations, schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information to illustrate the requirements and operations of each system. Detail drawings for the complete plumbing system including piping layouts and locations of connections; dimensions for roughing-in, foundation, and support points; schematic

diagrams and wiring diagrams or connection and interconnection diagrams. Detail drawings shall indicate clearances required for maintenance and operation. Details shall include loadings and proposed support methods. Mechanical drawing plans, elevations, views, and details, shall be drawn to scale.

Electrical Schematics; G, RE.

Complete electrical schematic lineless or full line interconnection and connection diagram for each piece of mechanical equipment having more than one automatic or manual electrical control device.

#### SD-03 Product Data

Welding Data; G, RE.

Pipe and Fittings; G, RE.

Pipe Joint Materials; G, RE.

Miscellaneous Materials; G, RE.

Pipe Hangars and Supports; G, RE.

Valves; G, RE, RE.

Plumbing Fixtuers; G, RE.

Fixtuer Supports; G, RE.

Backflow Preventers; G, RE.

Drains; G, RE.

Water Heater; G, EC.

Recirculation Pump; G, RE.

Water Meter; G, RE.

Water Hammer Arresters; G, RE.

Vibration-Absorbing Features; G, RE.

Details of vibration-absorbing features, including arrangement, foundation plan, dimensions and specifications.

Plumbing System; G, RE.

Diagrams, instructions, and other sheets proposed for posting.

Manufacturer's recommendations for the installation of bell and spigot and hubless joints for cast iron soil pipe.

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Tests, Flushing and Disinfection.

Test reports in booklet form showing all field tests performed to adjust each component and all field tests performed to prove compliance with the specified performance criteria, completion and testing of the installed system. Each test report shall indicate the final position of controls.

Backflow Prevention Assembly Tests..

Certification of proper operation shall be as accomplished in accordance with state regulations by an individual certified by the state to perform such tests. If no state requirement exists, the Contractor shall have the manufacturer's representative test the device, to ensure the unit is properly installed and performing as intended. The Contractor shall provide written

documentation of the tests performed and signed by the individual performing the tests.

#### SD-07 Certificates

##### Materials and Equipment;

Where materials or equipment are specified to comply with requirements of AGA, ASME, or NSF proof of such compliance shall be included. The label or listing of the specified agency will be acceptable evidence. In lieu of the label or listing, a written certificate may be submitted from an approved, nationally recognized testing organization equipped to perform such services, stating that the items have been tested and conform to the requirements and testing methods of the specified agency. Where equipment is specified to conform to requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, the design, fabrication, and installation shall conform to the code.

##### Bolts;

Written certification by the bolt manufacturer that the bolts furnished comply with the specified requirements. The certification shall include illustrations of product-required markings, the date of manufacture, and the number of each type of bolt to be furnished based on this certification.

#### SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

##### Plumbing System;

Six copies of the operation manual outlining the step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation and shutdown. The manual shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, parts list, and brief description of all equipment and their basic operating features. Six copies of the maintenance manual listing routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs. The manual shall include piping and equipment layout and simplified wiring and control diagrams of the system as installed.

#### 1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

Plumbing work shall be in accordance with ICC Plumbing Code.

#### 1.6 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

The Contractor shall become familiar with details of the work, verify dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

#### 1.7 BATTALION HEADQUARTERS AND COMPANY OPERATIONS FACILITIES (2-COF & 4-COF)

For the Battalion Headquarters, 4-COF, and 2-COF buildings, complete layout and sizing of the domestic water supply, drain, waste, and vent piping not shown. Submit Risers for government approval with shop drawings and include in asbuilt drawings. Note drawing requirements for domestic water

pipe sizing. For drain, waste, and vent piping located above floor slab, generally only floor slab and roof penetrations are shown on the plans. Note location on plans for the vent through roof. For Battalion Headquarters, except for lines serving only drinking fountains, use 50mm drain and waste pipe below finished floor in lieu of 32mm shown on plans. For Battalion Headquarters, 4-COF, and 2-COF buildings, use 100mm drain and waste pipe below finish floor for lines serving two shower floor drains. Add water hammer arrestors, one for domestic cold, and one for domestic hot to each of the three buildings.

1.8 CONDENSATE DRAIN LINES FOR FAN-COILS (FCU-1A, FCU-2A, AND FCU-1B), HEATING & VENTILATING UNITS (HVU-1A, 2A, 3A, 4A, 1B, & 2B), AND BLOWER COILS (BC-1A, BC-2A, & BC-1B) LOCATED IN COMPANY OPERATION FACILITIES (2-COF & 4-COF)

Condensate drain lines shown on drawings AM1.3 and AM1.4 for HVU-1A, 2A, 3A, and 4A, and BC-1A & 2A, shall be 50mm and routed along the underside of the Arms Vault ceiling to the Arms Vault floor drains. Install 50mm condensate drain drain line for FCU-1A, FCU-2A, and FCU-1B, shown on drawings AM1.3, AM1.4, and BM1.2 respectively, and route to mechanical room floor drains without passing over Comm. Room. Install condensate drain lines for HVU-1B and HVU-2B that is 50mm and routed along the underside of the Arms Vault ceiling to the Arms Vault floor drain.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Materials for various services shall be in accordance with TABLES I and II.

Pipe schedules shall be selected based on service requirements. Pipe fittings shall be compatible with the applicable pipe materials. Plastic pipe, fittings, and solvent cement shall meet NSF 14 and shall be NSF listed for the service intended. Polypropylene pipe and fittings shall conform to dimensional requirements of Schedule 40, Iron Pipe size. Pipe threads (except dry seal) shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Material or equipment containing lead shall not be used in any potable water system. In line devices such as water meters, building valves, check valves, meter stops, valves, fittings and back flow preventers shall comply with PL 93-523 and NSF 61, Section 8. End point devices such as drinking water fountains, lavatory faucets, kitchen and bar faucets, residential ice makers, supply stops and end point control valves used to dispense water for drinking must meet the requirements of NSF 61, Section 9. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe shall not be installed underground, under concrete floor slabs. Plastic pipe shall not be installed in air plenums.

2.1.1 Pipe Joint Materials

Hubless cast-iron soil pipe shall not be used under ground. Joints and gasket materials shall conform to the following:

- a. Coupling for Cast-Iron Pipe: for hub and spigot type ASTM A 74, AWWA C606. For hubless type: CISPI 310
- b. Coupling for Steel Pipe: AWWA C606.

- d. Flange Gaskets: Gaskets shall be made of non-asbestos material in accordance with ASME B16.21. Gaskets shall be flat, 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) thick, and contain Aramid fibers bonded with Styrene Butadiene Rubber (SBR) or Nitro Butadiene Rubber (NBR). Gaskets shall be the full face or self centering flat ring type. Gaskets used for hydrocarbon service shall be bonded with NBR.
- e. Neoprene Gaskets for Hub and Cast-Iron Pipe and Fittings: CISPI HSN-85.
- f. Brazing Material: Brazing material shall conform to AWS A5.8, BCuP-5.
- g. Brazing Flux: Flux shall be in paste or liquid form appropriate for use with brazing material. Flux shall be as follows: lead-free; have a 100 percent flushable residue; contain slightly acidic reagents; contain potassium borides; and contain fluorides.
- h. Solder Material: Solder metal shall conform to ASTM B 32.
- i. Solder Flux: Flux shall be liquid form, non-corrosive, and conform to ASTM B 813, Standard Test 1.
- j. PTFE Tape: PTFE Tape, for use with Threaded Metal or Plastic Pipe, ASTM D 3308.
- k. Rubber Gaskets for Cast-Iron Soil-Pipe and Fittings (hub and spigot type and hubless type): ASTM C 564.
- m. Flexible Elastomeric Seals: ASTM D 3139, ASTM D 3212 or ASTM F 477.
- o. Solvent Cement for Transition Joints between ABS and PVC Nonpressure Piping Components: ASTM D 3138.
- p. Plastic Solvent Cement for ABS Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 2235.
- q. Plastic Solvent Cement for PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 2564 and ASTM D 2855.
- r. Plastic Solvent Cement for CPVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM F 493.

#### 2.1.2 Miscellaneous Materials

Miscellaneous materials shall conform to the following:

- a. Water Hammer Arrestor: PDI WH 201.
- b. Copper, Sheet and Strip for Building Construction: ASTM B 370.
- c. Asphalt Roof Cement: ASTM D 2822.
- d. Hose Clamps: SAE J 1508.

- e. Supports for Off-The-Floor Plumbing Fixtures: ASME A112.6.1M.
- f. Metallic Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M.
- h. Coal-Tar Protective Coatings and Linings for Steel Water Pipeline: AWWA C203.
- i. Hypochlorites: AWWA B300.
- j. Liquid Chlorine: AWWA B301.
- l. Gauges - Pressure and Vacuum Indicating Dial Type - Elastic Element: ASME B40.1.
- m. Thermometers: ASTM E 1. Mercury shall not be used in thermometers.

### 2.1.3 Pipe Insulation Material

Insulation shall be as specified in Section 15080A THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

### 2.2 PIPE HANGERS, INSERTS, AND SUPPORTS

Pipe hangers, inserts, and supports shall conform to MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-69.

### 2.3 VALVES

Valves shall be provided on supplies to equipment and fixtures. Valves 65 mm (2-1/2 inches) and smaller shall be bronze with threaded bodies for pipe and solder-type connections for tubing. Valves 80 mm (3 inches) and larger shall have flanged iron bodies and bronze trim. Pressure ratings shall be based upon the application. Valves shall conform to the following standards:

Description	Standard
Butterfly Valves	MSS SP-67
Cast-Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends	MSS SP-70
Cast-Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends	MSS SP-71
Ball Valves with Flanged Butt-Welding Ends for General Service	MSS SP-72
Ball Valves Threaded, Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, and Flared Ends	MSS SP-110
Cast-Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends	MSS SP-78

Description	Standard
Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle, and Check Valves	MSS SP-80
Steel Valves, Socket Welding and Threaded Ends	ASME B16.34
Cast-Iron Globe and Angle Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends	MSS SP-85
Backwater Valves	ASME A112.14.1
Vacuum Relief Valves	ANSI Z21.22
Water Pressure Reducing Valves	ASSE 1003
Water Heater Drain Valves	ASSE 1005
Trap Seal Primer Valves	ASSE 1018
Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems	ANSI Z21.22
Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves for Automatically Fired Hot Water Boilers	ASME CSD-1 Safety Code No., Part CW, Article 5

#### 2.3.1 Hose Bibbs

Wall faucets with vacuum-breaker backflow preventer shall be brass with 20 mm (3/4 inch) male inlet threads, hexagon shoulder, and 20 mm (3/4 inch) hose connection. Faucet handle shall be securely attached to stem.

#### 2.3.2 Freeze-proof Wall Hydrants

Wall hydrants with vacuum-breaker backflow preventer shall have a nickel-brass or nickel-bronze wall plate or flange with nozzle and detachable key handle. A brass or bronze operating rod shall be provided within a galvanized iron casing of sufficient length to extend through the wall so that the valve is inside the building, and the portion of the hydrant between the outlet and valve is self-draining. A brass or bronze valve with coupling and union elbow having metal-to-metal seat shall be provided. Valve rod and seat washer shall be removable through the face of the hydrant. The hydrant shall have 20 mm (3/4 inch) exposed hose thread on spout and 20 mm (3/4 inch) male pipe thread on inlet. Unless shown otherwise, hydrants shall be installed 600 mm above finished grade.

#### 2.3.3 Relief Valves

Water heaters and hot water storage tanks shall have a combination pressure and temperature (P&T) relief valve. The pressure relief element of a P&T relief valve shall have adequate capacity to prevent excessive pressure buildup in the system when the system is operating at the maximum rate of heat input. The temperature element of a P&T relief valve shall have a

relieving capacity which is at least equal to the total input of the heaters when operating at their maximum capacity. Relief valves shall be rated according to ANSI Z21.22. Relief valves for systems where the maximum rate of heat input is less than 59 kW (200,000 Btuh) shall have 20 mm (3/4 inch) minimum inlets, and 20 mm (3/4 inch) outlets. Relief valves for systems where the maximum rate of heat input is greater than 59 kW (200,000 Btuh) shall have 25 mm (1 inch) minimum inlets, and 25 mm (1 inch) outlets. The discharge pipe from the relief valve shall be the size of the valve outlet.

## 2.4 FIXTURES

Fixtures shall be water conservation type, in accordance with ICC Plumbing Code. Fixtures for use by the physically handicapped shall be in accordance with CABO A117.1. Vitreous china, nonabsorbent, hard-burned, and vitrified throughout the body shall be provided. Porcelain enameled ware shall have specially selected, clear white, acid-resisting enamel coating evenly applied on surfaces. No fixture will be accepted that shows cracks, crazes, blisters, thin spots, or other flaws. Fixtures shall be equipped with appurtenances such as traps, faucets, stop valves, and drain fittings. Each fixture and piece of equipment requiring connections to the drainage system, except grease interceptors, shall be equipped with a trap.

Brass expansion or toggle bolts capped with acorn nuts shall be provided for supports, and polished chromium-plated pipe, valves, and fittings shall be provided where exposed to view. Fixtures with the supply discharge below the rim shall be equipped with backflow preventers. Internal parts of flush and/or flushometer valves, shower mixing valves, shower head face plates, and overflow tees and shoes of bathtub waste drains may contain acetal resin, fluorocarbon, nylon, acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) or other plastic material, if the material has provided satisfactory service under actual commercial or industrial operating conditions for not less than 2 years. Plastic in contact with hot water shall be suitable for 82 degrees C (180 degrees F) water temperature. Plumbing fixtures shall be as indicated in paragraph PLUMBING FIXTURE SCHEDULE.

## 2.5 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

Backflow preventers shall be approved and listed by the Foundation For Cross-Connection Control & Hydraulic Research. Reduced pressure principle assemblies, double check valve assemblies, atmospheric (nonpressure) type vacuum breakers, and pressure type vacuum breakers shall be tested, approved, and listed in accordance with FCCCHR-CCC. Backflow preventers with intermediate atmospheric vent shall conform to ASSE 1012. Reduced pressure principle backflow preventers shall conform to ASSE 1013. Hose connection vacuum breakers shall conform to ASSE 1011. Pipe applied atmospheric type vacuum breakers shall conform to ASSE 1001. Pressure vacuum breaker assembly shall conform to ASSE 1020. Air gaps in plumbing systems shall conform to ASME A112.1.2.

## 2.6 DRAINS

### 2.6.1 Floor and Shower Drains

Floor and shower drains shall consist of a galvanized body, integral

seepage pan, and adjustable perforated or slotted chromium-plated bronze, nickel-bronze, or nickel-brass strainer, consisting of grate and threaded collar. Floor drains shall be cast iron except where metallic waterproofing membrane is installed. Drains shall be of double drainage pattern for embedding in the floor construction. The seepage pan shall have weep holes or channels for drainage to the drainpipe. The strainer shall be adjustable to floor thickness. A clamping device for attaching flashing or waterproofing membrane to the seepage pan without damaging the flashing or waterproofing membrane shall be provided when required. Drains shall be provided with threaded connection. Between the drain outlet and waste pipe, a neoprene rubber gasket conforming to ASTM C 564 may be installed, provided that the drain is specifically designed for the rubber gasket compression type joint. Floor and shower drains shall conform to ASME A112.21.1M.

#### 2.6.2 Floor Sinks

Floor sinks shall be square, with 300 mm (12 inch) nominal overall width or diameter and 250 mm (10 inch) nominal overall depth. Floor sink shall have an acid-resistant enamel interior finish with cast-iron body, aluminum sediment bucket, and perforated grate of cast iron in industrial areas and stainless steel in finished areas. The outlet pipe size shall be as indicated or of the same size as the connecting pipe.

#### 2.7 TRAPS

Unless otherwise specified, traps shall be plastic per ASTM F 409 or copper-alloy adjustable tube type with slip joint inlet and swivel. Traps shall be without a cleanout. Tubes shall be copper alloy with walls not less than 0.813 mm (0.032 inch) thick within commercial tolerances, except on the outside of bends where the thickness may be reduced slightly in manufacture by usual commercial methods. Inlets shall have rubber washer and copper alloy nuts for slip joints above the discharge level. Swivel joints shall be below the discharge level and shall be of metal-to-metal or metal-to-plastic type as required for the application. Nuts shall have flats for wrench grip. Outlets shall have internal pipe thread, except that when required for the application, the outlets shall have sockets for solder-joint connections. The depth of the water seal shall be not less than 50 mm (2 inches). The interior diameter shall be not more than 3.2 mm (1/8 inch) over or under the nominal size, and interior surfaces shall be reasonably smooth throughout. A copper alloy "P" trap assembly consisting of an adjustable "P" trap and threaded trap wall nipple with cast brass wall flange shall be provided for lavatories. The assembly shall be a standard manufactured unit and may have a rubber-gasketed swivel joint.

#### 2.8 WATER HEATERS

Water heater types and capacities shall be as indicated. Each water heater shall have replaceable anodes. Each primary water heater shall have controls with an adjustable range that includes 32 to 71 degrees C (90 to 160 degrees F). Each gas-fired water heater and booster water heater shall have controls with an adjustable range that includes 49 to 82 degrees C (120 to 180 degrees F). Hot water systems utilizing recirculation

systems shall be tied into building off-hour controls. The thermal efficiencies and standby heat losses shall conform to TABLE III for each type of water heater specified. The only exception is that storage water heaters and hot water storage tanks having more than 2000 liters storage capacity need not meet the standard loss requirement if the tank surface area is insulated to R-12.5 and if a standing light is not used. Plastic materials polyetherimide (PEI) and polyethersulfone (PES) are forbidden to be used for vent piping of combustion gases.

#### 2.8.1 Automatic Storage Type

Heaters shall be complete with control system, temperature gauge, and pressure gauge, and shall have ASME rated combination pressure and temperature relief valve.

##### 2.8.1.1 Gas-Fired Type

Gas-fired water heaters shall conform to ANSI Z21.10.1 when input is 22 KW (75,000 BTU per hour) or less or ANSI Z21.10.3 for heaters with input greater than 22 KW (75,000 BTU per hour).

#### 2.9 PUMPS

##### 2.9.1 Circulating Pumps

Domestic hot water circulating pumps shall be electrically driven, single-stage, centrifugal, with mechanical seals, suitable for the intended service. Pump capacities, efficiencies, motor sizes, speeds, and impeller types shall be as shown. Pump and motor shall be supported by the piping on which it is installed. The shaft shall be one-piece, heat-treated, corrosion-resisting steel with impeller and smooth-surfaced housing of bronze. Motor shall be totally enclosed, fan-cooled and shall have sufficient wattage (horsepower) for the service required. Pump shall conform to HI 1.1-1.5. Pump motors smaller than 746 W (Fractional horsepower pump motors) shall have integral thermal overload protection in accordance with Section 16415A ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR. Guards shall shield exposed moving parts.

##### 2.9.2 Flexible Connectors

Flexible connectors shall be provided at the suction and discharge of each pump that is 1 hp or larger. Connectors shall be constructed of neoprene, rubber, or braided bronze, with Class 150 standard flanges. Flexible connectors shall be line size and suitable for the pressure and temperature of the intended service.

#### 2.10 DOMESTIC WATER SERVICE METER

Cold water meters 50 mm and smaller shall be positive displacement type conforming to AWWA C700. Cold water meters 64 mm and larger shall be turbine type conforming to AWWA C701. Meter register may be round or straight reading type. Meter shall be provided with a pulse generator, remote readout register and all necessary wiring and accessories. Maximum pressure drop through the water meter at peak design flowrate shall be 70

kPa.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Piping located in air plenums shall conform to NFPA 90A requirements. Plastic pipe shall not be installed in air plenums. Piping located in shafts that constitute air ducts or that enclose air ducts shall be noncombustible in accordance with NFPA 90A. Installation of plastic pipe where in compliance with NFPA may be installed in accordance with PPFA-01. The plumbing system shall be installed complete with necessary fixtures, fittings, traps, valves, and accessories. Water and drainage piping shall be extended 1.5 m outside the building, unless otherwise indicated. A gate valve and drain shall be installed on the water service line inside the building approximately 150 mm above the floor from point of entry. Piping shall be connected to the exterior service lines or capped or plugged if the exterior service is not in place. Sewer and water pipes shall be laid in separate trenches, except when otherwise shown. Exterior underground utilities shall be at least 300 mm below the average local frost depth or as indicated on the drawings. If trenches are closed or the pipes are otherwise covered before being connected to the service lines, the location of the end of each plumbing utility shall be marked with a stake or other acceptable means. Valves shall be installed with control no lower than the valve body.

#### 3.1.1 Water Pipe, Fittings, and Connections

##### 3.1.1.1 Utilities

The piping shall be extended to fixtures, outlets, and equipment. The hot-water and cold-water piping system shall be arranged and installed to permit draining. The supply line to each item of equipment or fixture, except faucets, flush valves, or other control valves which are supplied with integral stops, shall be equipped with a shutoff valve to enable isolation of the item for repair and maintenance without interfering with operation of other equipment or fixtures. Supply piping to fixtures, faucets, hydrants, shower heads, and flushing devices shall be anchored to prevent movement.

##### 3.1.1.2 Cutting and Repairing

The work shall be carefully laid out in advance, and unnecessary cutting of construction shall be avoided. Damage to building, piping, wiring, or equipment as a result of cutting shall be repaired by mechanics skilled in the trade involved.

##### 3.1.1.3 Mains, Branches, and Runouts

Piping shall be installed as indicated. Pipe shall be accurately cut and worked into place without springing or forcing. Structural portions of the building shall not be weakened. Aboveground piping shall run parallel with the lines of the building, unless otherwise indicated. Branch pipes from

service lines may be taken from top, bottom, or side of main, using crossover fittings required by structural or installation conditions. Supply pipes, valves, and fittings shall be kept a sufficient distance from other work and other services to permit not less than 12 mm between finished covering on the different services. Bare and insulated water lines shall not bear directly against building structural elements so as to transmit sound to the structure or to prevent flexible movement of the lines. Water pipe shall not be buried in or under floors unless specifically indicated or approved. Changes in pipe sizes shall be made with reducing fittings. Use of bushings will not be permitted except for use in situations in which standard factory fabricated components are furnished to accommodate specific accepted installation practice. Change in direction shall be made with fittings, except that bending of pipe 100 mm (4 inches) and smaller will be permitted, provided a pipe bender is used and wide sweep bends are formed. The center-line radius of bends shall be not less than six diameters of the pipe. Bent pipe showing kinks, wrinkles, flattening, or other malformations will not be acceptable.

#### 3.1.1.4 Pipe Drains

Pipe drains indicated shall consist of 20 mm (3/4 inch) hose bibb with renewable seat and full port ball valve ahead of hose bibb. At other low points, 20 mm (3/4 inch) brass plugs or caps shall be provided. Disconnection of the supply piping at the fixture is an acceptable drain.

#### 3.1.1.5 Expansion and Contraction of Piping

Allowance shall be made throughout for expansion and contraction of water pipe. Each hot-water and hot-water circulation riser shall have expansion loops or other provisions such as offsets, changes in direction, etc., where indicated and/or required. Risers shall be securely anchored as required or where indicated to force expansion to loops. Branch connections from risers shall be made with ample swing or offset to avoid undue strain on fittings or short pipe lengths. Horizontal runs of pipe over 15 m in length shall be anchored to the wall or the supporting construction about midway on the run to force expansion, evenly divided, toward the ends. Sufficient flexibility shall be provided on branch runouts from mains and risers to provide for expansion and contraction of piping. Flexibility shall be provided by installing one or more turns in the line so that piping will spring enough to allow for expansion without straining.

#### 3.1.1.6 Commercial-Type Water Hammer Arresters

Commercial-type water hammer arresters shall be provided on hot- and cold-water supplies and shall be located as generally indicated, with precise location and sizing to be in accordance with PDI WH 201. Water hammer arresters, where concealed, shall be accessible by means of access doors or removable panels. Commercial-type water hammer arresters shall conform to PDI WH 201. Vertical capped pipe columns will not be permitted.

#### 3.1.2 Joints

Installation of pipe and fittings shall be made in accordance with the

manufacturer's recommendations. Mitering of joints for elbows and notching of straight runs of pipe for tees will not be permitted. Joints shall be made up with fittings of compatible material and made for the specific purpose intended.

#### 3.1.2.1 Threaded

Threaded joints shall have American Standard taper pipe threads conforming to ASME B1.20.1. Only male pipe threads shall be coated with graphite or with an approved graphite compound, or with an inert filler and oil, or shall have a polytetrafluoroethylene tape applied.

#### 3.1.3.3 Unions and Flanges

Unions, flanges and mechanical couplings shall not be concealed in walls, ceilings, or partitions. Unions shall be used on pipe sizes 65 mm (2-1/2 inches) and smaller; flanges shall be used on pipe sizes 80 mm (3 inches) and larger.

#### 3.1.2.2 Cast Iron Soil, Waste and Vent Pipe

Bell and spigot compression and hubless gasketed clamp joints for soil, waste and vent piping shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommendations.

#### 3.1.2.3 Copper Tube and Pipe

The tube or fittings shall not be annealed when making connections.

- a. Brazed. Brazed joints shall be made in conformance with AWS B2.2, MSS SP-73, and CDA Tube Handbook with flux and are acceptable for all pipe sizes. Copper to copper joints shall include the use of copper-phosphorus or copper-phosphorus-silver brazing metal without flux. Brazing of dissimilar metals (copper to bronze or brass) shall include the use of flux with either a copper-phosphorus, copper-phosphorus-silver or a silver brazing filler metal.
- b. Soldered. Soldered joints shall be made with flux and are only acceptable for piping 50 mm (2 inches) and smaller. Soldered joints shall conform to ASME B31.5 and CDA Tube Handbook.

#### 3.1.2.4 Plastic Pipe

Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) pipe shall have joints made with solvent cement. PVC and CPVC pipe shall have joints made with solvent cement elastomeric, threading, (threading of Schedule 80 Pipe is allowed only where required for disconnection and inspection; threading of Schedule 40 Pipe is not allowed), or mated flanged.

#### 3.1.3 Dissimilar Pipe Materials

Connections between ferrous and non-ferrous copper water pipe shall be made with dielectric unions or flange waterways. Connecting joints between

plastic and metallic pipe shall be made with transition fitting for the specific purpose.

#### 3.1.4 Corrosion Protection for Buried Pipe and Fittings

##### 3.1.4.1 Cast Iron and Ductile Iron

Pressure pipe shall have protective coating, a cathodic protection system, and joint bonding. Pipe, fittings, and joints shall have a protective coating. The protective coating shall be completely encasing polyethylene tube or sheet in accordance with AWWA C105. Joints and fittings shall be cleaned, coated with primer, and wrapped with tape. The pipe shall be cleaned, coated, and wrapped prior to pipe tightness testing. Joints and fittings shall be cleaned, coated, and wrapped after pipe tightness testing. Tape shall conform to AWWA C203 and shall be applied with a 50 percent overlap. Primer shall be as recommended by the tape manufacturer.

#### 3.1.5 Pipe Sleeves and Flashing

Pipe sleeves shall be furnished and set in their proper and permanent location.

##### 3.1.5.1 Sleeve Requirements

Pipes passing through concrete or masonry walls or concrete floors or roofs shall be provided with pipe sleeves fitted into place at the time of construction. Sleeves are not required for supply, drainage, waste and vent pipe passing through concrete slab on grade, except where penetrating a membrane waterproof floor. A modular mechanical type sealing assembly may be installed in lieu of a waterproofing clamping flange and caulking and sealing of annular space between pipe and sleeve. The seals shall consist of interlocking synthetic rubber links shaped to continuously fill the annular space between the pipe and sleeve using galvanized steel bolts, nuts, and pressure plates. The links shall be loosely assembled with bolts to form a continuous rubber belt around the pipe with a pressure plate under each bolt head and each nut. After the seal assembly is properly positioned in the sleeve, tightening of the bolt shall cause the rubber sealing elements to expand and provide a watertight seal between the pipe and the sleeve. Each seal assembly shall be sized as recommended by the manufacturer to fit the pipe and sleeve involved. Sleeves shall not be installed in structural members, except where indicated or approved. Each sleeve shall extend through its respective floor, or roof, and shall be cut flush with each surface, except for special circumstances. Pipe sleeves passing through floors in wet areas such as mechanical equipment rooms, lavatories, and other plumbing fixture areas shall extend a minimum of 100 mm above the finished floor. Unless otherwise indicated, sleeves shall be of a size to provide a minimum of 6 mm (1/4 inch) clearance between bare pipe or insulation and inside of sleeve or between insulation and inside of sleeve. Sleeves in bearing walls and concrete slab on grade floors shall be steel pipe or cast-iron pipe. Sleeves in nonbearing walls or ceilings may be steel pipe, cast-iron pipe, galvanized sheet metal with lock-type longitudinal seam, or plastic. Except as otherwise specified, the annular space between pipe and sleeve, or between jacket over insulation and sleeve, shall be sealed as indicated with sealants conforming to ASTM C 920

and with a primer, backstop material and surface preparation as specified in Section 07900A JOINT SEALING. The annular space between pipe and sleeve, between bare insulation and sleeve or between jacket over insulation and sleeve shall not be sealed for interior walls which are not designated as fire rated. Sleeves through below-grade walls in contact with earth shall be recessed 12 mm (1/2 inch) from wall surfaces on both sides. Annular space between pipe and sleeve shall be filled with backing material and sealants in the joint between the pipe and masonry wall as specified above. Sealant selected for the earth side of the wall shall be compatible with dampproofing/waterproofing materials that are to be applied over the joint sealant. Pipe sleeves in fire-rated walls shall conform to the requirements in Section 07840A FIRESTOPPING.

#### 3.1.5.2 Flashing Requirements

Pipes passing through roof shall be installed through a 4.9 kg per square meter (16 ounce) copper flashing, each within an integral skirt or flange.

Flashing shall be suitably formed, and the skirt or flange shall extend not less than 200 mm from the pipe and shall be set over the roof or floor membrane in a solid coating of bituminous cement. The flashing shall extend up the pipe a minimum of 250 mm. For cleanouts, the flashing shall be turned down into the hub and caulked after placing the ferrule. Pipes passing through pitched roofs shall be flashed, using lead or copper flashing, with an adjustable integral flange of adequate size to extend not less than 200 mm from the pipe in all directions and lapped into the roofing to provide a watertight seal. The annular space between the flashing and the bare pipe or between the flashing and the metal-jacket-covered insulation shall be sealed as indicated. Flashing for dry vents shall be turned down into the pipe to form a waterproof joint. Pipes, up to and including 250 mm (10 inches) in diameter, passing through roof or floor waterproofing membrane may be installed through a cast-iron sleeve with caulking recess, anchor lugs, flashing-clamp device, and pressure ring with brass bolts. Flashing shield shall be fitted into the sleeve clamping device. Pipes passing through wall waterproofing membrane shall be sleeved as described above. A waterproofing clamping flange shall be installed.

#### 3.1.5.3 Waterproofing

Waterproofing at floor-mounted water closets shall be accomplished by forming a flashing guard from soft-tempered sheet copper. The center of the sheet shall be perforated and turned down approximately 40 mm to fit between the outside diameter of the drainpipe and the inside diameter of the cast-iron or steel pipe sleeve. The turned-down portion of the flashing guard shall be embedded in sealant to a depth of approximately 40 mm; then the sealant shall be finished off flush to floor level between the flashing guard and drainpipe. The flashing guard of sheet copper shall extend not less than 200 mm from the drainpipe and shall be lapped between the floor membrane in a solid coating of bituminous cement. If cast-iron water closet floor flanges are used, the space between the pipe sleeve and drainpipe shall be sealed with sealant and the flashing guard shall be upturned approximately 40 mm to fit the outside diameter of the drainpipe and the inside diameter of the water closet floor flange. The upturned portion of the sheet fitted into the floor flange shall be sealed.

#### 3.1.5.4 Optional Counterflashing

Instead of turning the flashing down into a dry vent pipe, or caulking and sealing the annular space between the pipe and flashing or metal-jacket-covered insulation and flashing, counterflashing may be accomplished by utilizing the following:

- a. A standard roof coupling for threaded pipe up to 150 mm (6 inches) in diameter.
- b. A tack-welded or banded-metal rain shield around the pipe.

#### 3.1.5.5 Pipe Penetrations of Slab on Grade Floors

Where pipes, fixture drains, floor drains, cleanouts or similar items penetrate slab on grade floors, except at penetrations of floors with waterproofing membrane as specified in paragraphs Flashing Requirements and Waterproofing, a groove 6 to 13 mm wide by 6 to 10 mm deep shall be formed around the pipe, fitting or drain. The groove shall be filled with a sealant as specified in Section 07900A JOINT SEALING.

#### 3.1.6 Fire Seal

Where pipes pass through fire walls, fire-partitions, fire-rated pipe chase walls or floors above grade, a fire seal shall be provided as specified in Section 07840A FIRESTOPPING.

#### 3.1.7 Supports

##### 3.1.7.1 General

Hangers used to support piping 50 mm (2 inches) and larger shall be fabricated to permit adequate adjustment after erection while still supporting the load. Pipe guides and anchors shall be installed to keep pipes in accurate alignment, to direct the expansion movement, and to prevent buckling, swaying, and undue strain. Piping subjected to vertical movement when operating temperatures exceed ambient temperatures shall be supported by variable spring hangers and supports or by constant support hangers. In the support of multiple pipe runs on a common base member, a clip or clamp shall be used where each pipe crosses the base support member. Spacing of the base support members shall not exceed the hanger and support spacing required for an individual pipe in the multiple pipe run. Threaded sections of rods shall not be formed or bent.

##### 3.1.7.2 Pipe Supports and Structural Bracing, Seismic Requirements

Piping and attached valves shall be supported and braced to resist seismic loads as specified in Sections 13080 SEISMIC PROTECTION FOR MISCELLANEOUS EQUIPMENT and 15070A SEISMIC PROTECTION FOR MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT . Structural steel required for reinforcement to properly support piping, headers, and equipment, but not shown, shall be provided. Material used for supports shall be as specified in Section 05120A STRUCTURAL STEEL.

### 3.1.7.3 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Installation of pipe hangers, inserts and supports shall conform to MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-69, except as modified herein.

- a. Types 5, 12, and 26 shall not be used.
- b. Type 3 shall not be used on insulated pipe.
- c. Type 18 inserts shall be secured to concrete forms before concrete is placed. Continuous inserts which allow more adjustment may be used if they otherwise meet the requirements for type 18 inserts.
- d. Type 19 and 23 C-clamps shall be torqued per MSS SP-69 and shall have both locknuts and retaining devices furnished by the manufacturer. Field-fabricated C-clamp bodies or retaining devices are not acceptable.
- e. Type 20 attachments used on angles and channels shall be furnished with an added malleable-iron heel plate or adapter.
- f. Type 24 may be used only on trapeze hanger systems or on fabricated frames.
- g. Type 39 saddles shall be used on insulated pipe 100 mm (4 inches) and larger when the temperature of the medium is 15 degrees C or higher. Type 39 saddles shall be welded to the pipe.
- h. Type 40 shields shall:
  - (1) Be used on insulated pipe less than 100 mm (4 inches).
  - (2) Be used on insulated pipe 100 mm (4 inches) and larger when the temperature of the medium is 15 degrees C or less.
  - (3) Have a high density insert for all pipe sizes. High density inserts shall have a density of 128 kg per cubic meter (8 pcf) or greater.
- i. Horizontal pipe supports shall be spaced as specified in MSS SP-69 and a support shall be installed not over 300 mm from the pipe fitting joint at each change in direction of the piping. Pipe supports shall be spaced not over 1.5 m apart at valves. Operating temperatures in determining hanger spacing for PVC or CPVC pipe shall be 49 degrees C for PVC and 82 degrees C for CPVC. Horizontal pipe runs shall include allowances for expansion and contraction.
- j. Vertical pipe shall be supported at each floor, except at slab-on-grade, at intervals of not more than 4.5 m nor more than 2 m from end of risers, and at vent terminations. Vertical pipe risers shall include allowances for expansion and contraction.

- k. Type 35 guides using steel, reinforced polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) or graphite slides shall be provided to allow longitudinal pipe movement. Slide materials shall be suitable for the system operating temperatures, atmospheric conditions, and bearing loads encountered. Lateral restraints shall be provided as needed. Where steel slides do not require provisions for lateral restraint the following may be used:
- (1) On pipe 100 mm (4 inches) and larger when the temperature of the medium is 15 degrees C or higher, a Type 39 saddle, welded to the pipe, may freely rest on a steel plate.
  - (2) On pipe less than 100 mm (4 inches) a Type 40 shield, attached to the pipe or insulation, may freely rest on a steel plate.
  - (3) On pipe 100 mm (4 inches) and larger carrying medium less than 15 degrees C a Type 40 shield, attached to the pipe or insulation, may freely rest on a steel plate.
- l. Pipe hangers on horizontal insulated pipe shall be the size of the outside diameter of the insulation. The insulation shall be continuous through the hanger on all pipe sizes and applications.
- m. Where there are high system temperatures and welding to piping is not desirable, the type 35 guide shall include a pipe cradle, welded to the guide structure and strapped securely to the pipe. The pipe shall be separated from the slide material by at least 100 mm or by an amount adequate for the insulation, whichever is greater.
- n. Hangers and supports for plastic pipe shall not compress, distort, cut or abrade the piping, and shall allow free movement of pipe except where otherwise required in the control of expansion/contraction.

### 3.1.8 Pipe Cleanouts

Pipe cleanouts shall be the same size as the pipe except that cleanout plugs larger than 100 mm (4 inches) will not be required. A cleanout installed in connection with cast-iron soil pipe shall consist of a long-sweep 1/4 bend or one or two 1/8 bends extended to the place shown. An extra-heavy cast-brass or cast-iron ferrule with countersunk cast-brass head screw plug shall be caulked into the hub of the fitting and shall be flush with the floor. Cleanouts in connection with other pipe, where indicated, shall be T-pattern, 90-degree branch drainage fittings with cast-brass screw plugs, except plastic plugs shall be installed in plastic pipe. Plugs shall be the same size as the pipe up to and including 100 mm (4 inches). Cleanout tee branches with screw plug shall be installed at the foot of soil and waste stacks, at the foot of interior downspouts, on each connection to building storm drain where interior downspouts are indicated, and on each building drain outside the building. Cleanout tee branches may be omitted on stacks in single story buildings with slab-on-grade construction or where less than 450 mm of crawl space is

provided under the floor. Cleanouts on pipe concealed in partitions shall be provided with chromium plated bronze, nickel bronze, nickel brass or stainless steel flush type access cover plates. Round access covers shall be provided and secured to plugs with securing screw. Square access covers may be provided with matching frames, anchoring lugs and cover screws. Cleanouts in finished walls shall have access covers and frames installed flush with the finished wall. Cleanouts installed in finished floors subject to foot traffic shall be provided with a chrome-plated cast brass, nickel brass, or nickel bronze cover secured to the plug or cover frame and set flush with the finished floor. Heads of fastening screws shall not project above the cover surface. Where cleanouts are provided with adjustable heads, the heads shall be cast iron.

### 3.2 WATER HEATERS AND HOT WATER STORAGE TANKS

#### 3.2.1 Relief Valves

No valves shall be installed between a relief valve and its water heater or storage tank. The P&T relief valve shall be installed where the valve actuator comes in contact with the hottest water in the heater. Whenever possible, the relief valve shall be installed directly in a tapping in the tank or heater; otherwise, the P&T valve shall be installed in the hot-water outlet piping. A vacuum relief valve shall be provided on the cold water supply line to the hot-water storage tank or water heater and mounted above and within 150 mm above the top of the tank or water heater.

#### 3.2.2 Installation of Gas-Fired Water Heater

Installation shall conform to NFPA 54 for gas fired and NFPA 31 for oil fired. Storage water heaters that are not equipped with integral heat traps and having vertical pipe risers shall be installed with heat traps directly on both the inlet and outlet. Circulating systems need not have heat traps installed. An acceptable heat trap may be a piping arrangement such as elbows connected so that the inlet and outlet piping make vertically upward runs of not less than 600 mm just before turning downward or directly horizontal into the water heater's inlet and outlet fittings. Commercially available heat traps, specifically designed by the manufacturer for the purpose of effectively restricting the natural tendency of hot water to rise through vertical inlet and outlet piping during standby periods may also be approved.

#### 3.2.3 Heat Traps

Piping to and from each water heater and hot water storage tank shall be routed horizontally and downward a minimum of 600 mm before turning in an upward direction.

#### 3.2.4 Connections to Water Heaters

Connections of metallic pipe to water heaters shall be made with dielectric unions or flanges.

### 3.3 FIXTURES AND FIXTURE TRIMMINGS

Polished chromium-plated pipe, valves, and fittings shall be provided where exposed to view. Angle stops, straight stops, stops integral with the faucets, or concealed type of lock-shield, and loose-key pattern stops for supplies with threaded, sweat or solvent weld inlets shall be furnished and installed with fixtures. Where connections between copper tubing and faucets are made by rubber compression fittings, a beading tool shall be used to mechanically deform the tubing above the compression fitting. Exposed traps and supply pipes for fixtures and equipment shall be connected to the rough piping systems at the wall, unless otherwise specified under the item. Floor and wall escutcheons shall be as specified. Drain lines and hot water lines of fixtures for handicapped personnel shall be insulated and do not require polished chrome finish. Plumbing fixtures and accessories shall be installed within the space shown.

#### 3.3.1 Fixture Connections

Where space limitations prohibit standard fittings in conjunction with the cast-iron floor flange, special short-radius fittings shall be provided. Connections between earthenware fixtures and flanges on soil pipe shall be made gastight and watertight with a closet-setting compound or neoprene gasket and seal. Use of natural rubber gaskets or putty will not be permitted. Fixtures with outlet flanges shall be set the proper distance from floor or wall to make a first-class joint with the closet-setting compound or gasket and fixture used.

#### 3.3.2 Flushometer Valves

Flushometer valves shall be secured to prevent movement by anchoring the long finished top spud connecting tube to wall adjacent to valve with approved metal bracket. Bumpers for water closet seats shall be installed on the flushometer stop.

#### 3.3.3 Height of Fixture Rims Above Floor

Lavatories shall be mounted with rim 775 mm above finished floor. Wall-hung drinking fountains and water coolers shall be installed with rim 1020 mm above floor. Wall-hung service sinks shall be mounted with rim 700 mm above the floor. Installation of fixtures for use by the physically handicapped shall be in accordance with CABO A117.1.

#### 3.3.4 Shower Bath Outfits

The area around the water supply piping to the mixing valves and behind the escutcheon plate shall be made watertight by caulking or gasketing.

#### 3.3.5 Fixture Supports

Fixture supports for off-the-floor lavatories, urinals, water closets, and other fixtures of similar size, design, and use, shall be of the chair-carrier type. The carrier shall provide the necessary means of mounting the fixture, with a foot or feet to anchor the assembly to the floor slab. Adjustability shall be provided to locate the fixture at the desired height and in proper relation to the wall. Support plates, in lieu of chair carrier, shall be fastened to the wall structure only where it is

not possible to anchor a floor-mounted chair carrier to the floor slab.

#### 3.3.5.1 Support for Solid Masonry Construction

Chair carrier shall be anchored to the floor slab. Where a floor-anchored chair carrier cannot be used, a suitable wall plate shall be imbedded in the masonry wall.

#### 3.3.5.2 Support for Concrete-Masonry Wall Construction

Chair carrier shall be anchored to floor slab. Where a floor-anchored chair carrier cannot be used, a suitable wall plate shall be fastened to the concrete wall using through bolts and a back-up plate.

#### 3.3.5.3 Support for Steel Stud Frame Partitions

Chair carrier shall be used. The anchor feet and tubular uprights shall be of the heavy duty design; and feet (bases) shall be steel and welded to a square or rectangular steel tube upright. Wall plates, in lieu of floor-anchored chair carriers, shall be used only if adjoining steel partition studs are suitably reinforced to support a wall plate bolted to these studs.

#### 3.3.5.4 Wall-Mounted Water Closet Gaskets

Where wall-mounted water closets are provided, reinforced wax, treated felt, or neoprene gaskets shall be provided. The type of gasket furnished shall be as recommended by the chair-carrier manufacturer.

#### 3.3.6 Backflow Prevention Devices

Plumbing fixtures, equipment, and pipe connections shall not cross connect or interconnect between a potable water supply and any source of nonpotable water. Backflow preventers shall be installed where indicated and in accordance with ICC Plumbing Code at all other locations necessary to preclude a cross-connect or interconnect between a potable water supply and any nonpotable substance. In addition backflow preventers shall be installed at all locations where the potable water outlet is below the flood level of the equipment, or where the potable water outlet will be located below the level of the nonpotable substance. Backflow preventers shall be located so that no part of the device will be submerged. Backflow preventers shall be of sufficient size to allow unrestricted flow of water to the equipment, and preclude the backflow of any nonpotable substance into the potable water system. Bypass piping shall not be provided around backflow preventers. Access shall be provided for maintenance and testing. Each device shall be a standard commercial unit.

#### 3.3.7 Access Panels

Access panels shall be provided for concealed valves and controls, or any item requiring inspection or maintenance. Access panels shall be of sufficient size and located so that the concealed items may be serviced, maintained, or replaced. Access panels shall be as specified in Section 05500A MISCELLANEOUS METAL.

### 3.3.8 Sight Drains

Sight drains shall be installed so that the indirect waste will terminate 50 mm above the flood rim of the funnel to provide an acceptable air gap.

### 3.3.9 Traps

Each trap shall be placed as near the fixture as possible, and no fixture shall be double-trapped. Traps installed on cast-iron soil pipe shall be cast iron. Traps installed on steel pipe or copper tubing shall be recess-drainage pattern, or brass-tube type. Traps installed on plastic pipe may be plastic conforming to ASTM D 3311. Traps for acid-resisting waste shall be of the same material as the pipe.

## 3.4 IDENTIFICATION SYSTEMS

### 3.4.1 Identification Tags

Identification tags made of brass, engraved laminated plastic, or engraved anodized aluminum, indicating service and valve number shall be installed on valves, except those valves installed on supplies at plumbing fixtures. Tags shall be 35 mm (1-3/8 inch) minimum diameter, and marking shall be stamped or engraved. Indentations shall be black, for reading clarity. Tags shall be attached to valves with No. 12 AWG, copper wire, chrome-plated beaded chain, or plastic straps designed for that purpose.

### 3.4.2 Pipe Color Code Marking

Color code marking of piping shall be as specified in Section 09900 PAINTING, GENERAL.

## 3.5 ESCUTCHEONS

Escutcheons shall be provided at finished surfaces where bare or insulated piping, exposed to view, passes through floors, walls, or ceilings, except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms. Escutcheons shall be fastened securely to pipe or pipe covering and shall be satin-finish, corrosion-resisting steel, polished chromium-plated zinc alloy, or polished chromium-plated copper alloy. Escutcheons shall be either one-piece or split-pattern, held in place by internal spring tension or setscrew.

## 3.6 PAINTING

Painting of pipes, hangers, supports, and other iron work, either in concealed spaces or exposed spaces, is specified in Section 09900 PAINTING, GENERAL.

## 3.7 TESTS, FLUSHING AND DISINFECTION

### 3.7.1 Plumbing System

The following tests shall be performed on the plumbing system in accordance with ICC Plumbing Code.

- a. Drainage and Vent Systems Test. The final test shall include a smoke test.
- b. Building Sewers Tests.
- c. Water Supply Systems Tests.

3.7.1.1 Test of Backflow Prevention Assemblies

Backflow prevention assembly shall be tested using gauges specifically designed for the testing of backflow prevention assemblies. Gauges shall be tested annually for accuracy in accordance with the University of Southern California's Foundation of Cross Connection Control and Hydraulic Research or the American Water Works Association Manual of Cross Connection (Manual M-14). Report form for each assembly shall include, as a minimum, the following:

Data on Device	Data on Testing Firm
Type of Assembly	Name
Manufacturer	Address
Model Number	Certified Tester
Serial Number	Certified Tester No.
Size	Date of Test
Location	
Test Pressure Readings	Serial Number and Test Data of
Gauges	

If the unit fails to meet specified requirements, the unit shall be repaired and retested.

3.7.2 Defective Work

If inspection or test shows defects, such defective work or material shall be replaced or repaired as necessary and inspection and tests shall be repeated. Repairs to piping shall be made with new materials. Caulking of screwed joints or holes will not be acceptable.

3.7.3 System Flushing

3.7.3.1 During Flushing

Before operational tests or disinfection, potable water piping system shall be flushed with potable water. Sufficient water shall be used to produce a water velocity that is capable of entraining and removing debris in all portions of the piping system. This requires simultaneous operation of all fixtures on a common branch or main in order to produce a flushing velocity of approximately 1.2 meters per second (4 fps) through all portions of the piping system. In the event that this is impossible due to size of system, the Contracting Officer (or the designated representative) shall specify the number of fixtures to be operated during flushing. Contractor shall provide adequate personnel to monitor the flushing operation and to ensure that drain lines are unobstructed in order to prevent flooding of the facility. Contractor shall be responsible for any flood damage resulting

from flushing of the system. Flushing shall be continued until entrained dirt and other foreign materials have been removed and until discharge water shows no discoloration.

#### 3.7.3.2 After Flushing

System shall be drained at low points. Strainer screens shall be removed, cleaned, and replaced. After flushing and cleaning, systems shall be prepared for testing by immediately filling water piping with clean, fresh potable water. Any stoppage, discoloration, or other damage to the finish, furnishings, or parts of the building due to the Contractor's failure to properly clean the piping system shall be repaired by the Contractor. When the system flushing is complete, the hot-water system shall be adjusted for uniform circulation. Flushing devices and automatic control systems shall be adjusted for proper operation. All faucets and drinking water fountains, to include any device considered as an end point device by NSF 61, Section 9, shall be flushed a minimum of 1 L per 24 hour period, ten times over a 14 day period.

#### 3.7.4 Operational Test

Upon completion of flushing and prior to disinfection procedures, the Contractor shall subject the plumbing system to operating tests to demonstrate satisfactory functional and operational efficiency. Such operating tests shall cover a period of not less than 8 hours for each system and shall include the following information in a report with conclusion as to the adequacy of the system:

- a. Time, date, and duration of test.
- b. Water pressures at the most remote and the highest fixtures.
- c. Operation of each fixture and fixture trim.
- d. Operation of each valve, hydrant, and faucet.
- e. Pump suction and discharge pressures.
- f. Temperature of each domestic hot-water supply.
- g. Operation of each floor and roof drain by flooding with water.
- h. Operation of each vacuum breaker and backflow preventer.
- i. Complete operation of each water pressure booster system, including pump start pressure and stop pressure.

#### 3.7.5 Disinfection

After operational tests are complete, the entire domestic hot- and cold-water distribution system shall be disinfected. System shall be flushed as specified, before introducing chlorinating material. The

chlorinating material shall be hypochlorites or liquid chlorine. Water chlorination procedure shall be in accordance with AWWA M20. The chlorinating material shall be fed into the water piping system at a constant rate at a concentration of at least 50 parts per million (ppm). A properly adjusted hypochlorite solution injected into the main with a hypochlorinator, or liquid chlorine injected into the main through a solution-feed chlorinator and booster pump, shall be used. The chlorine residual shall be checked at intervals to ensure that the proper level is maintained. Chlorine application shall continue until the entire main is filled. The water shall remain in the system for a minimum of 24 hours. Each valve in the system being disinfected shall be opened and closed several times during the contact period to ensure its proper disinfection. Following the 24-hour period, no less than 25 ppm chlorine residual shall remain in the system. Water tanks shall be disinfected by the addition of chlorine directly to the filling water. Following a 6 hour period, no less than 50 ppm chlorine residual shall remain in the tank. If after the 24 hour and 6 hour holding periods, the residual solution contains less than 25 ppm and 50 ppm chlorine respectively, flush the piping and tank with potable water, and repeat the above procedures until the required residual chlorine levels are satisfied. The system including the tanks shall then be flushed with clean water until the residual chlorine level is reduced to less than one part per million. During the flushing period each valve and faucet shall be opened and closed several times. Samples of water in disinfected containers shall be obtained from several locations selected by the Contracting Officer. The samples of water shall be tested for total coliform organisms (coliform bacteria, fecal coliform, streptococcal, and other bacteria) in accordance with AWWA EWW. The testing method used shall be either the multiple-tube fermentation technique or the membrane-filter technique. Disinfection shall be repeated until tests indicate the absence of coliform organisms (zero mean coliform density per 100 milliliters) in the samples for at least 2 full days. The system will not be accepted until satisfactory bacteriological results have been obtained.

#### 3.7.6 Flushing of Potable Water System

As an option to the system flushing specified above, the potable water system shall be flushed and conditioned until the residual level of lead is less than that specified by the base industrial hygienist. The water supply to the building shall be tested separately to ensure that any lead contamination found during potable water system testing is due to work being performed inside the building.

#### 3.8 PLUMBING FIXTURE SCHEDULE

P-1 WATER CLOSET (Barracks Buildings & Small Office in Battalion Headquarters):

Siphon-jet, elongated bowl, top supply spud, ASME A112.19.2M, floor mounted. Floor flange shall be copper alloy, cast iron, or plastic.

Gasket shall be wax type.

Seat - IAPMO Z124.5, Type A, white plastic, elongated, open front.

Flush Tank - An adequate quantity of water shall be provided to flush and clean the fixture served. The water supply to flush tanks equipped for manual flushing shall be controlled by a float valve or other automatic device designed to refill the tank after each discharge, and to completely shut off the water flow to the tank when the tank is filled to operational capacity. Water closets having their flush valve seat located below the flood level rim of the closet bowl shall have a ballcock installed within a sheath or in a separate and isolated compartment of the tank, both to have visible discharge onto the floor in case of failure. Provision shall be made to automatically supply water to the fixture so as to refill the trap seal after each flushing. The water supply to flush tanks equipped for automatic flushing shall be controlled by a suitable timing device. Ballcocks shall meet ASSE 1002.

P-1 WATER CLOSET (2-COFs, 4-COFs, & Battalion Headquarters except for small office):

Siphon-jet, elongated bowl, top supply spud, ASME A112.19.2M, wall mounted. Floor flange shall be copper alloy, cast iron, or plastic.

Gasket shall be wax type.

Seat - IAPMO Z124.5, Type A, white plastic, elongated, open front.

Flushometer Valve - ASSE 1037, large diaphragm type with non-hold-open feature, backcheck angle control stop, and vacuum breaker. Minimum upper chamber inside diameter of not less than 66.7 mm (2-5/8 inches) at the point where the diaphragm is sealed between the upper and lower chambers. The maximum water use shall be 6 liters per flush.

P-2 WATER CLOSET HANDICAPPED:

Height of top rim of bowl shall be in accordance with CABO A117.1; other features are the same as P-1 for 2-COFs, 4-COFs, & Battalion Headquarters except small office.

P-3 URINAL:

Wall hanging, with integral trap and extended shields, ASME A112.19.2M siphon jet. Top supply connection, back outlet.

Flushometer Valve - Similar to Flushometer Valve for P-1. The maximum water use shall be 3.8 liters per flush.

P-4 BATHTUB AND SHOWER HEAD:

Eljer Ventura Tub or equal, enameled steel, 1523mm (60inches) long x 762mm (30inches) wide x 365mm (14 11/32inches) high, slip resistant bottom, 40 gallon capacity, ASME A112.19.1M raised bottom.

Drain Assembly - Plug, cup strainer, overflow assembly, washers, couplings, pop-up lever, trip lever, stopper, fittings, etc., shall be brass, cast

copper alloy, or wrought copper alloy.

Bath Showers: Bath showers shall include bathtub spout, shower head, valves, and diverters. A shower head shall be nonadjustable spray, stainless steel, or chromium plated brass with ball joint. Handles shall be chrome plated die cast zinc alloy. Diverter shall be integral with single mixing valves or mounted hot and cold water valves. Tub spout shall be copper alloy. Mount shower head at 1900mm above finished floor.

P-5 LAVATORY:

Faucet - Single faucet shall be used. Faucets shall meet the requirements of NSF 61, Section 9. Faucets shall have metal replaceable cartridge control unit or metal cartridge units with diaphragm which can be replaced without special tools. Valves and handles shall be copper alloy. Flow shall be limited to 1 liter per cycle at a flowing water pressure of 549 kPa if a metering device or fitting is used that limits the period of water discharge such as a foot switch or fixture occupancy sensor. If a metering device is not used, the flow shall be limited to 0.16 liters per second at a flowing pressure of 549 kPa.

Handles - Two lever type handles required, one for hot, and one for cold. Cast, formed, or drop forged copper alloy.

Drain - Barracks buildings shall contain pop-up drain shall include stopper, lift rods, jam nut, washer, and tail piece. The SCB, 2-COFs, 4-COFs, and Battalion Headquarters shall not contain stoppers, but shall contain a strainer that is copper alloy or stainless steel. See paragraph FIXTURES for optional plastic accessories.

P-7 KITCHEN SINK (SCB and Battalion Headquarters):

Battalion Headquarters; Single bowl deep sin, Elkay model DLR222212 or approved equal. Self rim with holes for faucet and handles, overall dimensions 22 inches wide x 22 inches long, single bowl compartment 19 x 16 x 12 inches deep, seamless 18 gauge 304 stainless steel with full undercoat.

Battalion Headquarters; Faucet, Handles, and Spout - Two-wing handle center set type with high arc gooseneck. Faucets shall meet the requirements of NSF 61, Section 9. Spout body, base, dome, and handles are chrome-plated brass. Handles, gooseneck, etc shall be chrome-plated brass. Faucet is protected from back siphonage by combination of two check valves and a vacuum breaker. Flow shall be limited to 0.16 liters per second (2.5gpm) at a flowing water pressure of 549kPa (80psig).

Soldier Community Building SCB; Elkay model STCR-3322-L or approved equal. Self rim with holes for faucet and spout, double bowl, left compartment 14 x 15 3/4 x 10 inches deep, right compartment 14 x 15 3/4 x 7 inches deep with waste disposer drain opening, seamless 20 guage 302 stainless steel with full undercoat, right compartment equipped with food waste disposer. The food waste disposer shall contain a 3/4 horsepower motor with 2700rpm grinding action and delux sound insulation.

Soldier Community Building; Faucet, Handles, and Spout - Single lever control with pullout retractable spray, Elkay model LK4330FCR or equal. Faucets shall meet the requirements of NSF 61, Section 9. Spout body, base, dome, and handles are chrome-plated brass. Faucet is protected from back siphonage by combination of two check valves and a vacuum breaker. Flow shall be limited to 0.16 liters per second (2.5gpm) at a flowing water pressure of 549kPa (80psig).

Drain Assembly - Plug, cup strainer, crossbars, jam nuts, washers, couplings, stopper, etc., shall be copper alloy or stainless steel.

P-8 SERVICE SINK (Floor mounted janitor' sink):

Enameled cast iron ASME A112.19.1M, copper alloy or stainless steel ASME A112.19.3M corner, floor mounted 711.2 mm (28 inches) square, 171.5 mm (6-3/4 inches) deep.

Faucet and Spout - Cast or wrought copper alloy, with top or bottom brace, with backflow preventer. Faucets shall have replaceable seat and the washer shall rotate onto the seat. Handles shall be lever type. Strainers shall have internal threads.

Drain Assembly - Plug, cup strainer, crossbars, jam nuts, washers, couplings, stopper, etc., shall be copper alloy or stainless steel.

Trap - Cast iron, minimum 7.5 cm diameter.

P-9 COMBINATION SINK AND LAUNDRY TRAY (Barracks building):

Elkay model WNSF8236LR Weldbilt Stainless Steel Scullery Sink, or equal. Single compartment 14 gauge, type 304, stainless steel scullery sink, overall dimensions are 84inches long x 27.5 inches wide, compartment is 36inches long x 24inches wide x 14 inches deep, left and right drainboards that are each 24inches wide, sink supported on four Elkay model LK251 or equal, 16gauge stainless steel 1 5/8inch diameter legs with adjustable feet, 8inch high full length backsplash.

Faucet and Spout - Cast or wrought copper alloy, with top or bottom brace, with backflow preventer. Faucets shall have replaceable seat and the washer shall rotate onto the seat. Strainers shall have internal threads. Combination faucets with two valves and spouts shall be provided.

Handles - Cast or wrought copper alloy. Lever type.

P-10 KITCHEN SINK (Barracks Buildings):

Barracks building; Elkay model LR1517 or approved equal. Self rim with holes for faucet and handles, overall dimensions 17 1/2 inches wide x 15 inches long, single bowl compartment 12 x 12 x 7 1/2 inches deep, seamless

18 gauge 304 stainless steel with full undercoat.

Barracks building; Faucet, Handles, and Spout - Two-wing handle center set type with high arc gooseneck. Faucets shall meet the requirements of NSF 61, Section 9. Spout body, base, dome, and handles are chrome-plated brass. Handles, gooseneck, etc shall be chrome-plated brass. Faucet is protected from back siphonage by combination of two check valves and a vacuum breaker. Flow shall be limited to 0.16 liters per second (2.5gpm) at a flowing water pressure of 549kPa (80psig).

Drain Assembly - Plug, cup strainer, crossbars, jam nuts, washers, couplings, stopper, etc., shall be copper alloy or stainless steel.

P-12 UTILITY SINK (2-COFs & 4-COFs):

Elkay model WNSF8254 Weldbilt Stainless Steel Scullery Sink, or equal.

Double compartment 14 gauge, type 304, stainless steel scullery sink, overall dimensions are 57 inches long x 27.5 inches wide, each compartment is 27inches wide x 24inches long x 14 inches deep, sink supported on four Elkay model LK251 or equal, 16gauge stainless steel 1 5/8inch diameter legs with adjustable feet, 8inch high full length backsplash.

Faucet and Spout - Cast copper alloy, wrought copper alloy, cast iron, or stainless steel, with backflow preventer. Faucets shall have replaceable seat and the stem shall rotate onto the seat. Strainers shall have internal threads. Combination faucets shall be mounted on the tub back. Spouts shall be externally threaded for hose connection.

Handles - Cast copper alloy, wrought copper alloy, or stainless steel, lever type.

Traps - Copper alloy, or cast iron.

P-13 Shower (Battalion Headquarters, 2-COFs, and 4-COFs):

Shower heads, CID A-A-240 shall include a non-removable, tamperproof device to limit water flow to 0.16 liters per second (2.5 gpm) when tested in accordance with ASME A112.18.1M.

Shower head shall be adjustable spray, stainless steel or chromium plated brass with ball joint. Handles shall be chrome-plated die cast zinc alloy.

Control valves shall be copper alloy and have metal integral parts of copper alloy, nickel alloy, or stainless steel. Valves shall be thermostatic mixing type with pressure compensation. Shower head shall be vandalproof with integral back. Mount shower head at 1900mm above finished floor.

Shower Receptors; Florestone Terrazzo Shower Receptor model 200 or equal, tan color, marble chips cast in white Portland cement to produce a compressive strength of over 3000psi and reinforced with 16 gauge galvanized wire. Removeable type strainers are supplied. 1 1/4 inch tiling flange on 3 sides. Center drain.

## P-15 WATER COOLER DRINKING FOUNTAINS:

Elkay model LWCE4 or equal. Top mounted push button actuation, stainless steel finish, no lead design. Drinking fountains shall meet the requirements of NSF 61, Section 9. Water cooler drinking fountains shall: be self contained, conform to ARI 1010, use one of the fluorocarbon gases conforming to ARI 700 and ASHRAE 34 which has an Ozone Depletion Potential of less than or equal to 0.05.

## P-17 HANDICAPPED WATER COOLER DRINKING FOUNTAINS:

Elkay model EBFSA8 or equal. Front and side push bars, stainless steel finish, ADA compliant, no lead design. Otherwise, same as P-15.

## 3.9 POSTED INSTRUCTIONS

Framed instructions under glass or in laminated plastic, including wiring and control diagrams showing the complete layout of the entire system, shall be posted where directed. Condensed operating instructions explaining preventive maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal safe operation, and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system shall be prepared in typed form, framed as specified above for the wiring and control diagrams and posted beside the diagrams. The framed instructions shall be posted before acceptance testing of the systems.

## 3.10 PERFORMANCE OF WATER HEATING EQUIPMENT

Standard rating condition terms are as follows:

EF = Energy factor, overall efficiency.

ET = Thermal efficiency with 21 degrees C delta T.

EC = Combustion efficiency, 100 percent - flue loss when smoke = 0 (trace is permitted).

SL = Standby loss in W/0.093 sq. m. based on 27 degrees C delta T, or in percent per hour based on nominal 38 degrees C delta T.

HL = Heat loss of tank surface area.

V = Storage volume in liters

## 3.10.1 Storage Water Heaters

## 3.10.1.1 Gas

- a. Storage capacity of 379 liters or less, and input rating of 21980 W or less: minimum EF shall be 0.62-0.0019V per 10 CFR 430.
- b. Storage capacity of more than 379 liters - or input rating more

than 21980 W: Et shall be 77 percent; maximum SL shall be  
1.3+38/V, per ANSI Z21.10.3.

## 3.11 TABLES

TABLE I  
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR  
DRAINAGE, WASTE, AND VENT PIPING SYSTEMS

Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE					
		A	B	C	D	E	F
1	Cast iron soil pipe and fittings, hub and spigot, ASTM A 74 with compression gaskets	X	X	X	X	X	
2	Cast iron soil pipe and fittings hubless, CISPI 301 and ASTM A 888		X	X	X		
11	Seamless red brass pipe, ASTM B 43		X	X			
12	Bronzed flanged fittings, ASME B16.24 for use with Items 11 and 14				X	X	
13	Cast copper alloy solder joint pressure fittings, ASME B16.18 for use with Item 14				X	X	
14	Seamless copper pipe, ASTM B 42				X		
15	Cast bronze threaded fittings, ASME B16.15				X	X	
16	Copper drainage tube, (DWV), ASTM B 306	X*	X	X*	X	X	
17	Wrought copper and wrought alloy solder-joint drainage fittings. ASME B16.29	X	X	X	X	X	
18	Cast copper alloy solder joint drainage fittings, DWV, ASME B16.23	X	X	X	X	X	
19	Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) plastic drain, waste, and vent pipe and fittings ASTM D 2661, ASTM F 628	X	X	X	X	X	X
20	Polyvinyl Chloride plastic drain, waste and vent pipe and fittings, ASTM D 2665, ASTM F 891, (Sch 40)	X	X	X	X	X	X

TABLE I  
 PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR  
 DRAINAGE, WASTE, AND VENT PIPING SYSTEMS

Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE					
		A	B	C	D	E	F
	ASTM F 1760						

SERVICE:

- A - Underground Building Soil, Waste and Storm Drain
- B - Aboveground Soil, Waste, Drain In Buildings
- C - Underground Vent
- D - Aboveground Vent
- E - Interior Rainwater Conductors Aboveground
- F - Corrosive Waste And Vent Above And Belowground
- \* - Hard Temper

TABLE II  
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR PRESSURE PIPING SYSTEMS

Item No.	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE			
		A	B	C	D
5	Seamless red brass pipe, ASTM B 43	X	X		X
6	Bronze flanged fittings, ASME B16.24 for use with Items 5 and 7	X	X		X
7	Seamless copper pipe, ASTM B 42	X	X		X
8	Seamless copper water tube, ASTM B 88, ASTM B 88M	X**	X**	X**	X***
9	Cast bronze threaded fittings, ASME B16.15 for use with Items 5 and 7	X	X		X
10	Wrought copper and bronze solder-joint pressure fittings, ASME B16.22 for use with Items 5 and 7	X	X	X	X
11	Cast copper alloy solder-joint pressure fittings, ASME B16.18 for use with Items 8 and 9	X	X	X	X

A - Cold Water Aboveground

B - Hot Water 82 degree C Maximum Aboveground

C - Compressed Air Lubricated

D - Cold Water Service Belowground

Indicated types are minimum wall thicknesses.

\*\* - Type L - Hard

\*\*\* - Type K - Hard temper with brazed joints only or type K-soft temper  
without joints in or under floors

\*\*\*\* - In or under slab floors only brazed joints

TABLE III  
STANDARD RATING CONDITIONS AND MINIMUM PERFORMANCE RATINGS FOR WATER HEATING  
EQUIPMENT

## A. STORAGE WATER HEATERS

FUEL	STORAGE CAPACITY LITERS		INPUT RATING	TEST PROCEDURE	REQUIRED
Elect.	454 max.		12 kW max.	10 CFR 430	EF = 0.95-0.00132V minimum
Elect.	454 min.	OR	12 kW min.	ASHRAE 90.1 (Addenda B)	SL = 1.9 W/0.09 sq. m. maximum
Gas	380 max.		22 kW max.	10 CFR 430	EF = 0.62-0.0019V minimum
Gas	380 min.	OR	22 kW min.	ANSI Z21.10.3	ET= 77 percent; SL = 1.3+38/V max.

## TERMS:

EF = Energy factor, overall efficiency.

ET = Thermal efficiency with 21 degrees C delta T.

EC = Combustion efficiency, 100 percent - flue loss when smoke = 0  
(trace is permitted).

SL = Standby loss in W/0.09 sq. m. based on 27 degrees C delta T, or in  
percent per hour based on nominal 32 degrees C delta T.

HL = Heat loss of tank surface area

V = Storage volume in gallons

-- End of Section --

## SECTION 15895A

## AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEM

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## AIR CONDITIONING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (ARI)

ARI 350	(1986) Sound Rating of Non-Ducted Indoor Air-Conditioning Equipment
ARI 410	(1991) Forced-Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils
ARI 430	(1989) Central-Station Air-Handling Units
ARI 440	(1998) Room Fan-Coil and Unit Ventilator
ARI 880	(1998) Air Terminals
ARI Guideline D	(1996) Application and Installation of Central Station Air-Handling Units

## AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION (AMCA)

AMCA 210	(1999) Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating
AMCA 300	(1996) Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans

## AMERICAN BEARING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (ABMA)

AFBMA Std 9	(1990) Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings
AFBMA Std 11	(1990; R 1999) Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Roller Bearings

## AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS (ASTM)

ASTM A 123/A 123M	(2001) Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A 53/A 53M	(2001) Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped,

## Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless

ASTM A 924/A 924M	(1999) General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM B 117	(1997) Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM C 1071	(1998) Thermal and Acoustical Insulation (Glass Fiber, Duct Lining Material)
ASTM D 1654	(1992) Evaluation of Painted or Coated Specimens Subjected to Corrosive Environments
ASTM D 3359	(1997) Measuring Adhesion by Tape Test
ASTM D 520	(2000) Zinc Dust Pigment
ASTM E 437	(1992; R 1997) Industrial Wire Cloth and Screens (Square Opening Series)

## AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 52.1	(1992) Gravimetric and Dust-Spot Procedures for Testing Air-Cleaning Devices Used in General Ventilation for Removing Particulate Matter
ASHRAE 68	(1986) Laboratory Method of Testing In-Duct Sound Power Measurement Procedures for Fans
ASHRAE 70	(1991) Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets

## NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1	(1998) Motors and Generators
-----------	------------------------------

## NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 90A	(1999) Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
----------	---

## SHEET METAL &amp; AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION (SMACNA)

SMACNA HVAC Duct Const Stds	(1995; Addenda Nov 1997) HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible
SMACNA Install Fire Damp HVAC	(1992) Fire, Smoke and Radiation Damper Installation Guide for HVAC Systems

SMACNA Leakage Test Mnl (1985) HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

CID A-A-1419 (Rev D; Canc. Notice 1) Filter Element,  
Air Conditioning (Viscous-Impingement and  
Dry Types, Replaceable)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 181 (1996; Rev Dec 1998) Factory-Made Air  
Ducts and Air Connectors

UL 1995 (1995; Rev thru Aug 1999) Heating and  
Cooling Equipment

UL 214 (1997) Tests for Flame-Propagation of  
Fabrics and Films

UL 555 (1999) Fire Dampers

UL 586 (1996; Rev thru Aug 1999) High-Efficiency,  
Particulate, Air Filter Units

UL 705 (1994; Rev thru Feb 1999) Power Ventilators

UL 900 (1994; Rev thru Nov 1999) Test Performance  
of Air Filter Units

UL Bld Mat Dir (1999) Building Materials Directory

UL Elec Const Dir (1999) Electrical Construction Equipment  
Directory

UL Fire Resist Dir (1999) Fire Resistance Directory (2 Vol.)

1.2 COORDINATION OF TRADES

Ductwork, piping offsets, fittings, and accessories shall be furnished as required to provide a complete installation and to eliminate interference with other construction.

1.3 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Equipment delivered and placed in storage shall be stored with protection from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

All items designated with a G, EC including product literature, calculations, component data, certificates, diagrams and drawings, shall be submitted concurrently in one complete system submittal. Omission of any required submittal item from the package shall be sufficient cause for disapproval of the entire submittal. Unless otherwise indicated in the submittal review commentary, disapproval of any item within the package shall require a re-submittal of the entire system package, in which all deficiencies shall be corrected.

#### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Drawings; G, EC  
Installation; G, EC

Drawings shall consist of equipment layout including assembly and installation details and electrical connection diagrams; ductwork layout showing the location of all supports and hangers, typical hanger details, gauge reinforcement, reinforcement spacing rigidity classification, and static pressure and seal classifications; and piping layout showing the location of all guides and anchors, the load imposed on each support or anchor, and typical support details. Drawings shall include any information required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and will properly function as a unit and shall show equipment relationship to other parts of the work, including clearances required for operation and maintenance.

#### Test Procedures

Proposed test procedures for piping hydrostatic test, ductwork leak test, and performance tests of systems, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related testing.

#### Welding Procedures

A copy of qualified welding procedures, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of welding operations.

#### System Diagrams; G, RE

Proposed diagrams, at least 2 weeks prior to start of related testing. System diagrams that show the layout of equipment, piping, and ductwork, and typed condensed operation manuals explaining preventative maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal, safe operation, and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system shall be framed under glass or laminated plastic. After approval, these items shall be posted where directed.

#### Similar Services

Statement demonstrating successful completion of similar

services on at least 5 projects of similar size and scope, at least 2 weeks prior to submittal of other items required by this section.

#### Welding Joints

A list of names and identification symbols of qualified welders and welding operators, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of welding operations.

#### SD-03 Product Data

Air Handling Units; G, EC.  
 Ductwork and Fittings; G, EC.  
 Dampers; G, EC.  
 Exhaust Fans; G, EC.  
 Diffusers, Registers and Grilles; G, EC.  
 Louvers; G, EC.  
 VAV Boxes; G, EC.  
 Fan Coil Units; G, EC.  
 Wall Mounted Humidifier;G, EC  
 Blower Coils;G, EC

Complete product literature and supporting data to demonstrate compliance with the contract requirements. Data shall indicate specific item and model proposed. Performance and material specifications shall be clearly identified.

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Performance Tests; ,

Test reports for the piping hydrostatic test, ductwork leak test, and performance tests in booklet form, upon completion of testing. Reports shall document phases of tests performed including initial test summary, repairs/adjustments made, and final test results.

#### SD-07 Certificates

Bolts; ,

Written certification from the bolt manufacturer that the bolts furnished comply with the requirements of this specification. The certification shall include illustrations of product markings, and the number of each type of bolt to be furnished.

#### SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operating and Maintenance Instructions;G, RE  
 Six manuals listing step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, shutdown, and routine maintenance, at least 2 weeks prior to field training. The manuals shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, parts list, list of parts and tools that should be kept in stock by the owner for routine maintenance including the name of a local supplier, simplified wiring and controls diagrams, troubleshooting guide, and recommended service organization (including address and telephone

number) for each item of equipment. Each service organization submitted shall be capable of providing 4 hour onsite response to a service call on an emergency basis.

#### 1.5 BATTALION HEADQUARTERS

For Battalion Headquarters, extend exhaust register and associated ductwork shown on sheet CM5.1 at about 4 meters plan South (true East) of Janitors Closet Room 106 in Womens Room 116, to serve Janitor's Closet 106. Install Return Grille RG-1 in ceiling of Janitor's Closet Room 106. Delete Sentence. Extend supply registers shown on sheet CM5.1 serving Lobby room 102 to soffit shown on sheet CA2.1 with bottom of diffuser at about 2800mm above finished floor. Disregard sheet CM8.1 portion which incorrectly shows outside ventilation air for air handling unit AHU-1C and blower coil BC-1C being supplied through mechanical room outside wall. Runouts to diffusers, grilles, and registers for all supply and exhaust shall contain manual balancing dampers. The round louver shown on sheet CM5.3 is a relief and exhaust louver and not an intake louver as stated in note. Coordinate move ceiling diffusers, registers, and grilles where interference is present with lights. Add 300mm x 300mm transfer opening in wall above ceiling, and return grille RG-1 in ceiling, for Women room 116 and Men room 119. Add return grille in ceilings for Vestibule 101, 143, and 103.

#### 1.6 COMPANY OPERATIONS FACILITIES

For Drawings AM7.1, AM7.2, and BM7.1, move Propeller Unit Heaters PUH-1A, PUH-2A, and PUH-1B from location shown, to about 2.5 meters away from louver above mechanical room door and oriented to blow air at the louver. Move controlling thermostat from position shown on the drawings to outside wall and immediately North of door. Do not locate unit heaters above electrical equipment shaded maintenance area. Maintain height shown on plans.

#### 1.7 BLOWER COILS BC-1A, BC-2A, BC-1B, BC-1C

Select Blower Coil fans with operating point right of the characteristic curve static pressure peak. A static pressure change of plus or minus 125Pa from the operating point shall not change the airflow by more than 10 percent and shall not result in motor overloading. Backward inclined or airfoil type fans are acceptable in lieu of forward curve type shown on drawings.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Components and equipment shall be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of products that are of a similar material, design and workmanship. The standard products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years before bid opening. The 2-year experience shall include applications of components and equipment under similar circumstances and of similar size. The 2 years must be satisfactorily completed by a product which has been sold or is

offered for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures. Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation, for not less than 6000 hours exclusive of the manufacturer's factory tests, can be shown. The equipment items shall be supported by a service organization.

## 2.2 ASBESTOS PROHIBITION

Asbestos and asbestos-containing products shall not be used.

## 2.3 NAMEPLATES

Equipment shall have a nameplate that identifies the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, model or serial number, and catalog number.

## 2.4 EQUIPMENT GUARDS AND ACCESS

Belts, pulleys, chains, gears, couplings, projecting setscrews, keys, and other rotating parts exposed to personnel contact shall be fully enclosed or guarded according to OSHA requirements. High temperature equipment and piping exposed to contact by personnel or where it creates a potential fire hazard shall be properly guarded or covered with insulation of a type specified. Catwalks, shall be provided where shown and shall be constructed according to Section 05500A MISCELLANEOUS METAL.

## 2.5 ELECTRICAL WORK

Electrical motor-driven equipment specified shall be provided complete with motor, motor starter, and controls. Unless otherwise specified, electric equipment, including wiring and motor efficiencies, shall be according to Section 16415A ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR. Electrical characteristics and enclosure type shall be as shown. Unless otherwise indicated, motors of 745 W and above shall be high efficiency type. Motor starters shall be provided complete with thermal overload protection and other appurtenances necessary. Each motor shall be according to NEMA MG 1 and shall be of sufficient size to drive the equipment at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor. Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified, and any control wiring required for controls and devices, but not shown, shall be provided. Where two-speed or variable-speed motors are indicated, solid-state variable-speed controller may be provided to accomplish the same function. Solid-state variable-speed controllers shall be utilized for motors rated 7.45 kW (10 hp) or less. Adjustable frequency drives shall be used for larger motors.

## 2.6 CONTROLS

Controls shall be provided as specified in Section 15951A HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC) CONTROL SYSTEMS.

## 2.7 DUCTWORK COMPONENTS

### 2.7.1 Metal Ductwork

All aspects of metal ductwork construction, including all fittings and components, shall comply with SMACNA HVAC Duct Const Stds unless otherwise specified. Elbows shall be radius type with a centerline radius of 1-1/2 times the width or diameter of the duct where space permits. Otherwise, elbows having a minimum radius equal to the width or diameter of the duct or square elbows with factory fabricated turning vanes may be used. All ductwork shall meet the requirements of Seal Class A. Sealants shall conform to fire hazard classification specified in Section 15080A THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. Pressure sensitive tape shall not be used as a sealant. Spiral lock seam duct, and flat oval shall be made with duct sealant and locked with not less than 3 equally spaced drive screws or other approved methods indicated in SMACNA HVAC Duct Const Stds. The sealant shall be applied to the exposed male part of the fitting collar so that the sealer will be on the inside of the joint and fully protected by the metal of the duct fitting. One brush coat of the sealant shall be applied over the outside of the joint to at least 50 mm band width covering all screw heads and joint gap. Dents in the male portion of the slip fitting collar will not be acceptable. Outdoor air intake ducts and plenums shall be fabricated with watertight soldered or brazed joints and seams.

#### 2.7.1.1 Transitions

Diverging air flow transitions shall be made with each side pitched out a maximum of 15 degrees, for an included angle of 30 degrees. Transitions for converging air flow shall be made with each side pitched in a maximum of 30 degrees, for an included angle of 60 degrees, or shall be as indicated. Factory-fabricated reducing fittings for systems using round duct sections when formed to the shape of the ASME short flow nozzle, need not comply with the maximum angles specified.

#### 2.7.1.2 Insulated Nonmetallic Flexible Duct Runouts

Flexible duct runouts shall be used only where indicated. Runout length shall be as shown on the drawings, but shall in no case exceed 3 m. Runouts shall be preinsulated, factory fabricated, and shall comply with NFPA 90A and UL 181. Either field or factory applied vapor barrier shall be provided. Where coil induction or high velocity units are supplied with vertical air inlets, a streamlined and vaned and mitered elbow transition piece shall be provided for connection to the flexible duct or hose. The last elbow to these units, other than the vertical air inlet type, shall be a die-stamped elbow and not a flexible connector. Insulated flexible connectors may be used as runouts. The insulated material and vapor barrier shall conform to the requirements of Section 15080A THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. The insulation material surface shall not be exposed to the air stream.

#### 2.7.1.3 General Service Duct Connectors

A flexible duct connector approximately 150 mm in width shall be provided where sheet metal connections are made to fans or where ducts of dissimilar metals are connected. For round/oval ducts, the flexible material shall be secured by stainless steel or zinc-coated, iron clinch-type draw bands.

For rectangular ducts, the flexible material locked to metal collars shall be installed using normal duct construction methods. The composite connector system shall comply with UL 214 and be classified as "flame-retarded fabrics" in UL Bld Mat Dir.

## 2.7.2 Ductwork Accessories

### 2.7.2.1 Duct Access Doors

Access doors shall be provided in ductwork and plenums where indicated and at all air flow measuring primaries, automatic dampers, fire dampers, coils, thermostats, and other apparatus requiring service and inspection in the duct system, and unless otherwise shown, shall conform to SMACNA HVAC Duct Const Stds. Access doors shall be provided upstream and downstream of air flow measuring primaries and heating and cooling coils. Doors shall be minimum 375 x 450 mm, unless otherwise shown. Where duct size will not accommodate this size door, the doors shall be made as large as practicable. Doors 600 x 600 mm or larger shall be provided with fasteners operable from both sides. Doors in insulated ducts shall be the insulated type.

### 2.7.2.2 Fire Dampers

Fire dampers shall be 1-1/2 hour fire rated unless otherwise indicated. Fire dampers shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 90A and UL 555. A positive pressure relief door shall be provided upstream of fire dampers which are provided in the supply air and exhaust ducts. A negative pressure relief door shall be provided downstream of fire dampers which are provided in the return air ducts. The size and pressure relief rating of the relief doors shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The pressure relief door may be a combined pressure relief and access door unit if it is specifically listed by the manufacturer as such. A pressure relief door shall be provided upstream of the fire damper. If the ductwork connected to the fire damper is to be insulated then this pressure relief damper shall be factory insulated. Fire dampers shall be automatic operating type and shall have a dynamic rating suitable for the maximum air velocity and pressure differential to which it will be subjected. Fire dampers shall be approved for the specific application, and shall be installed according to their listing. Fire dampers shall be equipped with a steel sleeve or adequately sized frame installed in such a manner that disruption of the attached ductwork, if any, will not impair the operation of the damper. Sleeves or frames shall be equipped with perimeter mounting angles attached on both sides of the wall or floor opening. Ductwork in fire-rated floor-ceiling or roof-ceiling assembly systems with air ducts that pierce the ceiling of the assemblies shall be constructed in conformance with UL Fire Resist Dir. Fire dampers shall be curtain type with damper blades. Dampers shall not reduce the duct or the air transfer opening cross-sectional area. Dampers shall be installed so that the centerline of the damper depth or thickness is located in the centerline of the wall, partition or floor slab depth or thickness. Unless otherwise indicated, the installation details given in SMACNA Install Fire Damp HVAC and in manufacturer's instructions for fire dampers shall be followed.

### 2.7.2.3 Splitters and Manual Balancing Dampers

Splitters and manual balancing dampers shall be furnished with accessible operating mechanisms. Where operators occur in finished portions of the building, operators shall be chromium plated with all exposed edges rounded. Splitters shall be operated by quadrant operators or 5 mm (3/16 inch) rod brought through the side of the duct with locking setscrew and bushing. Two rods are required on splitters over 200 mm (8 inches). Manual volume control dampers shall be operated by locking-type quadrant operators. Dampers and splitters shall be 2 gauges heavier than the duct in which installed. Unless otherwise indicated, multileaf dampers shall be opposed blade type with maximum blade width of 300 mm. Access doors or panels shall be provided for all concealed damper operators and locking setscrews. Unless otherwise indicated, the locking-type quadrant operators for dampers, when installed on ducts to be thermally insulated, shall be provided with stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters to provide clearance between the duct surface and the operator not less than the thickness of the insulation. Stand-off mounting items shall be integral with the operator or standard accessory of the damper manufacturer. Volume dampers shall be provided where indicated and where required for balancing.

### 2.7.2.4 Air Deflectors and Branch Connections

Air deflectors shall be provided at duct mounted supply outlets, at takeoff or extension collars to supply outlets, at duct branch takeoff connections, and at 90 degree elbows, as well as at locations as indicated on the drawings or otherwise specified. Conical branch connections or 45 degree entry connections may be used in lieu of deflectors or extractors for branch connections. All air deflectors, except those installed in 90 degree elbows, shall be provided with an approved means of adjustment. Adjustment shall be made from easily accessible means inside the duct or from an adjustment with sturdy lock on the face of the duct. When installed on ducts to be thermally insulated, external adjustments shall be provided with stand-off mounting brackets, integral with the adjustment device, to provide clearance between the duct surface and the adjustment device not less than the thickness of the thermal insulation. Air deflectors shall be factory-fabricated units consisting of curved turning vanes or louver blades designed to provide uniform air distribution and change of direction with minimum turbulence or pressure loss. Air deflectors shall be factory or field assembled. Blade air deflectors, also called blade air extractors, shall be approved factory fabricated units consisting of equalizing grid and adjustable blade and lock. Adjustment shall be easily made from the face of the diffuser or by position adjustment and lock external to the duct. Stand-off brackets shall be provided on insulated ducts and are described herein. Fixed air deflectors, also called turning vanes, shall be provided in 90 degree elbows.

### 2.7.3 Duct Sleeves, Framed Prepared Openings, Closure Collars

#### 2.7.3.1 Duct Sleeves

Duct sleeves shall be provided for round ducts 375 mm in diameter or less passing through floors, walls, ceilings, or roof, and installed during

construction of the floor, wall, ceiling, or roof. Round ducts larger than 375 mm in diameter and square, rectangular, and oval ducts passing through floors, walls, ceilings, or roof shall be installed through framed prepared openings. The Contractor shall be responsible for the proper size and location of sleeves and prepared openings. Sleeves and framed openings are also required where grilles, registers, and diffusers are installed at the openings. Framed prepared openings shall be fabricated from 1.0 mm (20 gauge) galvanized steel, unless otherwise indicated. Where sleeves are installed in bearing walls or partitions, black steel pipe, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 20 shall be used. Sleeve shall provide 25 mm clearance between the duct and the sleeve or 25 mm clearance between the insulation and the sleeve for insulated ducts.

#### 2.7.3.2 Framed Prepared Openings

Openings shall have 25 mm clearance between the duct and the opening or 25 mm clearance between the insulation and the opening for insulated ducts.

#### 2.7.3.3 Closure Collars

Collars shall be fabricated of galvanized sheet metal not less than 100 mm wide, unless otherwise indicated, and shall be installed on exposed ducts on each side of walls or floors where sleeves or prepared openings are provided. Collars shall be installed tight against surfaces. Collars shall fit snugly around the duct or insulation. Sharp edges of the collar around insulated duct shall be ground smooth to preclude tearing or puncturing the insulation covering or vapor barrier. Collars for round ducts 375 mm in diameter or less shall be fabricated from 1.0 mm (20 gauge) galvanized steel. Collars for round ducts larger than 375 mm and square, and rectangular ducts shall be fabricated from 1.3 mm (18 gauge) galvanized steel. Collars shall be installed with fasteners on maximum 150 mm centers, except that not less than 4 fasteners shall be used.

#### 2.7.4 Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles

Units shall be factory-fabricated of stainless steel or aluminum and shall distribute the specified quantity of air evenly over space intended without causing noticeable drafts, air movement faster than 0.25 m/s (50 fpm) in occupied zone, or dead spots anywhere in the conditioned area. Outlets for diffusion, spread, throw, and noise level shall be as required for specified performance. Performance shall be certified according to ASHRAE 70. Inlets and outlets shall be sound rated and certified according to ASHRAE 70. Sound power level shall be as indicated. Diffusers and registers shall be provided with volume damper with accessible operator, unless otherwise indicated; or if standard with the manufacturer, an automatically controlled device will be acceptable. Volume dampers shall be opposed blade type for all diffusers and registers, except linear slot diffusers. Linear slot diffusers shall be provided with round or elliptical balancing dampers. Where the inlet and outlet openings are located less than 2 m above the floor, they shall be protected by a grille or screen according to NFPA 90A.

##### 2.7.4.1 Diffusers

Diffuser types shall be as indicated. Ceiling mounted units shall be furnished with anti-smudge devices, unless the diffuser unit minimizes ceiling smudging through design features. Diffusers shall be provided with air deflectors of the type indicated. Air handling troffers or combination light and ceiling diffusers shall conform to the requirements of UL Elec Const Dir for the interchangeable use as cooled or heated air supply diffusers or return air units. Ceiling mounted units shall be installed with rims tight against ceiling. Sponge rubber gaskets shall be provided between ceiling and surface mounted diffusers for air leakage control. Suitable trim shall be provided for flush mounted diffusers. Duct collar connecting the duct to diffuser shall be airtight and shall not interfere with volume controller. Return or exhaust units shall be similar to supply diffusers.

#### 2.7.4.2 Registers and Grilles

Units shall be four-way directional-control type, except that return and exhaust registers may be fixed horizontal or vertical louver type similar in appearance to the supply register face. Registers shall be provided with sponge-rubber gasket between flanges and wall or ceiling. Wall supply registers shall be installed at least 150 mm below the ceiling unless otherwise indicated. Return and exhaust registers shall be located 150 mm above the floor unless otherwise indicated. Four-way directional control may be achieved by a grille face which can be rotated in 4 positions or by adjustment of horizontal and vertical vanes. Grilles shall be as specified for registers, without volume control damper.

#### 2.7.5 Louvers

Louvers for installation in exterior walls which are associated with the air supply and distribution system shall be as specified in Section 07600A SHEET METALWORK, GENERAL.

#### 2.7.6 Air Vents, Penthouses, and Goosenecks

Air vents, penthouses, and goosenecks shall be fabricated from galvanized steel or aluminum sheets with galvanized or aluminum structural shapes. Sheet metal thickness, reinforcement, and fabrication shall conform to SMACNA HVAC Duct Const Stds. Louver blades shall be accurately fitted and secured to frames. Edges of louver blades shall be folded or beaded for rigidity and baffled to exclude driving rain. Air vents, penthouses, and goosenecks shall be provided with bird screen.

#### 2.7.7 Bird Screens and Frames

Bird screens shall conform to ASTM E 437, No. 2 mesh, aluminum or stainless steel. Aluminum screens shall be rated "medium-light". Stainless steel screens shall be rated "light". Frames shall be removable type, or stainless steel or extruded aluminum.

### 2.8 AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT

#### 2.8.1 Fans

Fans shall be tested and rated according to AMCA 210. Fans may be connected to the motors either directly or indirectly with V-belt drive. V-belt drives shall be designed for not less than 150 percent of the connected driving capacity. Motor sheaves shall be variable pitch for 11 kW (15 hp) and below and fixed pitch as defined by ARI Guideline D. Variable pitch sheaves shall be selected to drive the fan at a speed which will produce the specified capacity when set at the approximate midpoint of the sheave adjustment. When fixed pitch sheaves are furnished, a replaceable sheave shall be provided when needed to achieve system air balance. Motors for V-belt drives shall be provided with adjustable rails or bases. Removable metal guards shall be provided for all exposed V-belt drives, and speed-test openings shall be provided at the center of all rotating shafts. Fans shall be provided with personnel screens or guards on both suction and supply ends, except that the screens need not be provided, unless otherwise indicated, where ducts are connected to the fan.

Fan and motor assemblies shall be provided with vibration-isolation supports. Vibration-isolation units shall be standard products with published loading ratings. Each fan shall be selected to produce the capacity required at the fan static pressure indicated. Sound power level shall be as indicated. The sound power level values shall be obtained according to AMCA 300. Standard AMCA arrangement, rotation, and discharge shall be as indicated.

#### 2.8.1.1 In-Line Centrifugal Fans

In-line fans shall have centrifugal backward inclined blades, stationary discharge conversion vanes, internal and external belt guards, and adjustable motor mounts. Fans shall be mounted in a welded tubular casing.

Air shall enter and leave the fan axially. Inlets shall be streamlined with conversion vanes to eliminate turbulence and provide smooth discharge air flow. Fan bearings and drive shafts shall be enclosed and isolated from the air stream. Fan bearings shall be sealed against dust and dirt and shall be permanently lubricated, and shall be precision self aligning ball or roller type. Bearing life shall be L50 rated at not less than 200,000 hours as defined by AFBMA Std 9 and AFBMA Std 11.

#### 2.8.1.2 Panel Type Power Wall Ventilators

Fans shall be propeller type, assembled on a reinforced metal panel with venturi opening spun into panel. Fans with wheels less than 600 mm (24 inches) diameter shall be direct or V-belt driven and fans with wheels 600 mm (24 inches) diameter and larger shall be V-belt drive type. Fans shall be furnished with wall mounting collar. Lubricated bearings shall be provided. Fans shall be fitted with wheel and motor side metal or wire guards which have a corrosion-resistant finish. Motor enclosure shall be dripproof type. Motor operated or pneumatic-operated dampers shall be provided as shown.

#### 2.8.1.3 Centrifugal Type Power Wall Ventilators

Fans shall be V-belt driven centrifugal type with backward inclined, non-overloading wheel. Motor housing shall be removable and weatherproof. Unit housing shall be designed for sealing to building surface and for discharge and condensate drippage away from building surface. Housing

shall be constructed of heavy gauge aluminum. Unit shall be fitted with an manufacturer's standard motor-operated damper, an airtight and liquid-tight metallic wall sleeve. Motor enclosure shall be totally enclosed fan cooled type. Lubricated bearings shall be provided.

#### 2.8.1.4 Centrifugal Type Power Roof Ventilators

Fans shall be direct driven with backward inclined, non-overloading wheel. Motor compartment housing shall be hinged or removable and weatherproof, constructed of heavy gauge aluminum. Fans shall be provided with birdscreen, disconnect switch, motorized dampers, sound curb, roof curb, and extended base. Motors enclosure shall be dripproof type. Grease-laden kitchen exhaust fans shall be centrifugal type according to UL 705 and fitted with V-belt drive, round hood, and windband upblast discharge configuration, integral residue trough and collection device, motor and power transmission components located in outside positively air ventilated compartment. Lubricated bearings shall be provided.

#### 2.8.1.5 Ceiling Exhaust Fans

Suspended cabinet-type ceiling exhaust fans shall be centrifugal type, direct-driven. Fans shall have acoustically insulated housing. Integral backdraft damper shall be chatter-proof. The integral face grille shall be of egg-crate design or louver design. Fan motors shall be mounted on vibration isolators. Unit shall be provided with mounting flange for hanging unit from above. Fans shall be U.L. listed.

#### 2.8.2 Coils

Coils shall be fin-and-tube type constructed of seamless copper tubes and aluminum fins mechanically bonded or soldered to the tubes. Copper tube wall thickness shall be a minimum of 0.508 mm. Casing and tube support sheets shall be not lighter than 1.6 mm (16 gauge) galvanized steel, formed to provide structural strength. When required, multiple tube supports shall be provided to prevent tube sag. Each coil shall be tested at the factory under water at not less than 2.76 MPa (400 psi) air pressure and shall be suitable for 1.38 MPa (200 psi) working pressure. Coils shall be mounted for counterflow service. Coils shall be rated and certified according to ARI 410.

##### 2.8.2.1 Water Coils

Water coils shall be installed with a pitch of not less than 10 mm per meter of the tube length toward the drain end. Headers shall be constructed of cast iron, welded steel or copper. Each coil shall be provided with a plugged vent and drain connection extending through the unit casing.

#### 2.8.3 Air Filters

Air filters shall be listed according to requirements of UL 900, except high efficiency particulate air filters of 99.97 percent efficiency by the DOP Test method shall be as listed under the Label Service and shall meet the requirements of UL 586.

### 2.8.3.1 Extended Surface Pleated Panel Filters

Filters shall be 50 mm (2 inch) depth, sectional, disposable type of the size indicated and shall have an average efficiency of 25 to 30 percent when tested according to ASHRAE 52.1. Initial resistance at 2.54 m/s (500 feet per minute) shall not exceed 9 mm water gauge. Filters shall be UL Class 2. Media shall be nonwoven cotton and synthetic fiber mat. A wire support grid bonded to the media shall be attached to a moisture resistant fiberboard frame. All four edges of the filter media shall be bonded to the inside of the frame to prevent air bypass and increase rigidity.

## 2.9 AIR HANDLING UNITS

### 2.9.1 Factory-Fabricated Air Handling Units

Units shall be as indicated. Units shall include fans, coils, airtight insulated casing, adjustable V-belt drives, belt guards for externally mounted motors, access sections where indicated, mixing box combination sectional filter-mixing box, vibration-isolators, and appurtenances required for specified operation. Vibration isolators shall be as indicated. Each air handling unit shall have physical dimensions suitable to fit space allotted to the unit and shall have the capacity indicated. Air handling unit shall have published ratings based on tests performed according to ARI 430.

#### 2.9.1.1 Casings

Casing sections shall be 2 inch double wall type constructed of a minimum 18 gauge galvanized steel, or 18 gauge steel outer casing protected with a corrosion resistant paint finish according to paragraph FACTORY PAINTING. Inner casing of double-wall units shall be minimum 1.0 mm (20 gauge) solid galvanized steel. Casing shall be designed and constructed with an integral structural steel frame such that exterior panels are non-load bearing. Exterior panels shall be individually removable. Removal shall not affect the structural integrity of the unit. Casings shall be provided with inspection doors, access sections, and access doors. Inspection and access doors shall be insulated, fully gasketed, double-wall type, of a minimum 1.3 mm (18 gauge) outer and 1.0 mm (20 gauge) inner panels. Doors shall be rigid and provided with heavy duty hinges and latches. Inspection doors shall be a minimum 300 mm wide by 300 mm high. Access doors shall be minimum 600 mm wide and shall be the full height of the unit casing or a minimum of 1800 mm, whichever is less. A minimum 200 mm by 200 mm sealed glass window suitable for the intended application shall be installed in all access doors. Access Sections shall be according to paragraph AIR HANDLING UNITS. Drain pan shall be double-bottom type constructed of 16 gauge galvanized steel, pitched to the drain connection. Drain pans shall be constructed water tight, treated to prevent corrosion, and designed for positive condensate drainage. When 2 or more cooling coils are used, with one stacked above the other, condensate from the upper coils shall not flow across the face of lower coils. Intermediate drain pans or condensate collection channels and downspouts shall be provided, as required to carry condensate to the unit drain pan out of the air stream and without moisture carryover. Each casing section handling conditioned

air shall be insulated with not less than 25 mm (1 inch) thick, 24 kg per cubic meter (1-1/2 pound density) coated fibrous glass material having a thermal conductivity not greater than 0.033 W/m-K (0.23 Btu/hr-sf-F). Factory applied fibrous glass insulation shall conform to ASTM C 1071, except that the minimum thickness and density requirements do not apply, and shall meet the requirements of NFPA 90A. Foam-type insulation is not acceptable. Foil-faced insulation shall not be an acceptable substitute for use on double-wall access doors and inspections doors and casing sections. Duct liner material, coating, and adhesive shall conform to fire-hazard requirements specified in Section 15080A THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. Exposed insulation edges and joints where insulation panels are butted together shall be protected with a metal nosing strip or shall be coated to conform to meet erosion resistance requirements of ASTM C 1071. A latched and hinged inspection door, shall be provided in the fan and coil sections. Additional inspection doors, access doors and access sections shall be provided where indicated.

#### 2.9.1.2 Heating and Cooling Coils

Coils shall be provided as specified in paragraph AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT, for types indicated.

#### 2.9.1.3 Air Filters

Air filters shall be as specified in paragraph AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT for types and thickness indicated.

#### 2.9.1.4 Fans

Fans shall be double-inlet, centrifugal type with each fan in a separate scroll. Fans and shafts shall be dynamically balanced prior to installation into air handling unit, then the entire fan assembly shall be statically and dynamically balanced at the factory after it has been installed in the air handling unit. Fans shall be mounted on steel shafts accurately ground and finished. Fan bearings shall be sealed against dust and dirt and shall be precision self-aligning ball or roller type. Bearing life shall be L50 rated at not less than 200,000 hours as defined by AFBMA Std 9 and AFBMA Std 11. Bearings shall be permanently lubricated or lubricated type with lubrication fittings readily accessible at the drive side of the unit. Bearings shall be supported by structural shapes, or die formed sheet structural members, or support plates securely attached to the unit casing. Bearings may not be fastened directly to the unit sheet metal casing. Fans and scrolls shall be furnished with coating indicated. Fans shall be driven by a unit-mounted or a floor-mounted motor connected to fans by V-belt drive complete with belt guard for externally mounted motors. Belt guards shall be the three sided enclosed type with solid or expanded metal face. Belt drives shall be designed for not less than a 1.3 service factor based on motor nameplate rating. Motor sheaves shall be variable pitch for 20 kW and below and fixed pitch above 20 kW as defined by ARI Guideline D. Where fixed sheaves are required, variable pitch sheaves may be used during air balance, but shall be replaced with an appropriate fixed sheave after air balance is completed. Variable pitch sheaves shall be selected to drive the fan at a speed that will produce the specified capacity when set at the approximate midpoint of the sheave

adjustment. Motors for V-belt drives shall be provided with adjustable bases. Fan motors shall have open enclosures. Unit fan or fans shall be selected to produce the required capacity at the fan static pressure. Sound power level shall be as indicated. The sound power level values shall be obtained according to AMCA 300 or ASHRAE 68.

#### 2.9.1.5 Access Sections and Filter/Mixing Boxes

Access sections shall be provided where indicated and shall be furnished with access doors. Access sections and filter/mixing boxes shall be constructed in a manner identical to the remainder of the unit casing and shall be equipped with access doors. Mixing boxes shall be designed to minimize air stratification and to promote thorough mixing of the air streams.

#### 2.9.1.6 Dampers

Dampers shall be as specified in paragraph CONTROLS.

### 2.10 TERMINAL UNITS

#### 2.10.1 Room Fan-Coil Units

Base units shall include galvanized coil casing, coil assembly drain pan air filter, fans, motor, fan drive, and motor switch, plus an enclosure for cabinet models and casing for concealed models. Leveling devices integral with the unit shall be provided for vertical type units. Sound power levels shall be as indicated. Sound power level data or values for these units shall be obtained according to test procedures based on ARI 350. Sound power values apply to units provided with factory fabricated cabinet enclosures and standard grilles. Values obtained for the standard cabinet models will be acceptable for concealed models without separate test provided there is no variation between models as to the coil configuration, blowers, motor speeds, or relative arrangement of parts. Automatic valves and controls shall be provided as specified in paragraph CONTROLS. Each unit shall be fastened securely to the building structure. Capacity of the units shall be as indicated. Room fan-coil units shall be certified as complying with ARI 440, and shall meet the requirements of UL 1995.

##### 2.10.1.1 Enclosures

Enclosures shall be fabricated of not lighter than 1.3 mm (18 gauge) steel, reinforced and braced. Front panels of enclosures shall be removable and provided with 13 mm (1/2 inch) thick dual density fibrous glass insulation. The exposed side shall be high density, erosion-proof material suitable for use in air streams with velocities up to 23 m/s (4,500 fpm). Ferrous metal surfaces shall be galvanized or factory finished with corrosion resistant enamel. Access doors or removable panels shall be provided for piping and control compartments. Duct discharge collar shall be provided for concealed models. Enclosures shall have easy access for filter replacement.

##### 2.10.1.2 Fans

Fans shall be galvanized steel or aluminum, multiblade, centrifugal type. In lieu of metal, fans and scrolls may be non-metallic materials of suitably reinforced compounds. Fans shall be dynamically and statically balanced. Surfaces shall be smooth. Assemblies shall be accessible for maintenance. Disassembly and re-assembly shall be by means of mechanical fastening devices and not by epoxies or cements.

#### 2.10.1.3 Coils

Coils shall be constructed of not less than 10 mm (3/8 inch) outside diameter seamless copper tubing, with copper or aluminum fins mechanically bonded or soldered to the tubes. Coils shall be provided with not less than 12 mm (1/2 inch) outside diameter flare or sweat connectors, accessory piping package with thermal connections suitable for connection to the type of control valve supplied, and manual air vent. Coils shall be tested hydrostatically at 2000 kPa (300 psi) or under water at 1700 kPa (250 psi) air pressure and suitable for 1400 kPa (200 psi) working pressure. Provisions shall be made for coil removal.

#### 2.10.1.4 Drain Pans

Drain and drip pans shall be sized and located to collect all water condensed on and dripping from any item within the unit enclosure or casing. Drain pans shall be constructed of not lighter than 0.9 mm (21 gauge) steel, galvanized after fabrication, thermally insulated to prevent condensation. Insulation shall have a flame spread rating not over 25 without evidence of continued progressive combustion, a smoke developed rating no higher than 50, and shall be of a waterproof type or coated with a waterproofing material. In lieu of the above, drain pans may be constructed of die-formed 0.85 mm (22 gauge) steel, formed from a single sheet, galvanized after fabrication, insulated and coated as specified for the 0.9 mm (21 gauge) material or of die-formed 0.9 mm (21 gauge) type 304 stainless steel, insulated as specified above. Drain pans shall be pitched to drain. Minimum 20 mm (3/4 inch) NPT or 15 mm (5/8 inch) OD drain connection shall be provided in drain pan. Auxiliary drain pans to catch drips from control and piping packages, eliminating insulation of the packages, may be plastic; if metal, the auxiliary pans shall comply with the requirements specified above. Insulation at control and piping connections thereto shall extend 25 mm minimum over the auxiliary drain pan.

#### 2.10.1.5 Manually Operated Outside Air Dampers

Manually operated outside air dampers shall be provided according to the arrangement indicated. Dampers shall be parallel airfoil type and of galvanized construction. Blades shall rotate on stainless steel or nylon sleeve bearings.

#### 2.10.1.6 Filters

Filters shall be of the fiberglass disposable type, 25 mm (1 inch) thick, conforming to CID A-A-1419. Filters in each unit shall be removable without the use of tools.

2.10.1.7 Motors

Motors shall be of the permanent split-capacitor type with built-in thermal overload protection, directly connected to unit fans. Motor switch shall be two or three speeds and off, manually operated, and shall be mounted on an identified plate adjacent to the room thermostat. In lieu of the above fan speed control, a solid-state variable-speed controller having a minimum speed reduction of 50 percent may be provided. Motors shall have permanently-lubricated or oilable sleeve-type or combination ball and sleeve-type bearings with vibration isolating mountings suitable for continuous duty. Motor power consumption, shown in watts, at the fan operating speed selected to meet the specified capacity shall not exceed the following values:

Free Discharge Motors

Unit Capacity (LS)	Maximum Power Consumption (Watts)		
	115V	230V	277V
94	70	110	90
142	100	110	110
189	170	150	150
283	180	210	220
378	240	240	230
472	310	250	270
566	440	400	440

High Static Motors

Unit Capacity (L/S)	Maximum Power Consumption (Watts)
94	145
142	145
189	210
283	320
378	320
472	530
566	530

2.10.1.8 Sound Considerations

Unit fan motors shall not exceed 1520 rpm when operating at high speed.

2.10.2 Variable Air Volume (VAV)

VAV terminal units shall be the type, size, and capacity shown and shall be mounted in the ceiling or wall cavity and shall be suitable for single duct system applications. Volume damper, damper actuators and controls shall not be installed in the unit. Unit enclosures shall be constructed of galvanized steel not lighter than 0.85 mm (22 gauge) or aluminum sheet not lighter than 1.3 mm (18 gauge). Reheat coils shall be provided as

indicated. Acoustical lining shall be according to NFPA 90A.

#### 2.10.2.1 Variable Volume, Parallel Fan Powered

Unit fan shall be centrifugal, direct-driven, double-inlet type with forward curved blades. Fan motor shall be either single speed with speed controller or three-speed, permanently lubricated, permanent split-capacitor type. Fan/motor assembly shall be isolated from the casing to minimize vibration transmission. Fan control shall be factory furnished.

#### 2.11 FACTORY PAINTING

Units which are not of galvanized construction according to ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 924/A 924M shall be factory painted with a corrosion resisting paint finish. Internal and external ferrous metal surfaces shall be cleaned, phosphatized and coated with a paint finish which has been tested according to ASTM B 117, ASTM D 1654, and ASTM D 3359. Evidence of satisfactory paint performance for a minimum of 125 hours for units to be installed indoors and 500 hours for units to be installed outdoors shall be submitted. Rating of failure at the scribe mark shall be not less than 6, average creepage not greater than 3 mm. Rating of the inscribed area shall not be less than 10, no failure. On units constructed of galvanized steel which have been welded, exterior surfaces of welds or welds that have burned through from the interior shall receive a final shop docket of zinc-rich protective paint according to ASTM D 520 Type I.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

Work shall be installed as shown and according to the manufacturer's diagrams and recommendations.

##### 3.1.1 Condensate Drain Lines

Water seals shall be provided in the condensate drain from all units except room fan-coil units. The depth of each seal shall be 50 mm plus 0.1 mm for each Pa, of the total static pressure rating of the unit to which the drain is connected. Water seals shall be constructed of 2 tees and an appropriate U-bend with the open end of each tee plugged. Pipe cap or plug cleanouts shall be provided where indicated. Drains indicated to connect to the sanitary waste system shall be connected by an indirect waste fitting. Air conditioner drain lines shall be insulated as specified in Section 15080A THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

##### 3.1.2 Equipment and Installation

Frames and supports shall be provided for tanks, compressors, pumps, valves, air handling units, fans, coils, dampers, and other similar items requiring supports. Air handling units shall be floor mounted or ceiling hung, as indicated. The method of anchoring and fastening shall be as detailed. Floor-mounted equipment, unless otherwise indicated, shall be set on not less than 150 mm (6 inch) concrete pads or curbs doweled in place. Concrete foundations for circulating pumps shall be heavy enough to

minimize the intensity of the vibrations transmitted to the piping and the surrounding structure, as recommended in writing by the pump manufacturer. In lieu of a concrete pad foundation, a concrete pedestal block with isolators placed between the pedestal block and the floor may be provided. The concrete foundation or concrete pedestal block shall be of a mass not less than three times the weight of the components to be supported. Lines connected to the pump mounted on pedestal blocks shall be provided with flexible connectors. Foundation drawings, bolt-setting information, and foundation bolts shall be furnished prior to concrete foundation construction for all equipment indicated or required to have concrete foundations. Concrete for foundations shall be as specified in Section 03300 CAST-IN-PLACE STRUCTURAL CONCRETE.

#### 3.1.3 Access Panels

Access panels shall be provided for concealed valves, vents, controls, dampers, and items requiring inspection or maintenance. Access panels shall be of sufficient size and located so that the concealed items may be serviced and maintained or completely removed and replaced. Access panels shall be as specified in Section 05500A MISCELLANEOUS METAL.

#### 3.1.4 Flexible Connectors

Pre-insulated flexible connectors and flexible duct shall be attached to other components in accordance with the latest printed instructions of the manufacturer to ensure a vapor tight joint. Hangers, when required to suspend the connectors, shall be of the type recommended by the connector or duct manufacturer and shall be provided at the intervals recommended.

#### 3.1.5 Sleeved and Framed Openings

Space between the sleeved or framed opening and the duct or the duct insulation shall be packed as specified in Section 07840A FIRESTOPPING for fire rated penetrations. For non-fire rated penetrations, the space shall be packed as specified in Section 07900A JOINT SEALING.

#### 3.1.6 Metal Ductwork

Installation shall be according to SMACNA HVAC Duct Const Stds unless otherwise indicated. Duct supports for sheet metal ductwork shall be according to SMACNA HVAC Duct Const Stds, unless otherwise specified. Friction beam clamps indicated in SMACNA HVAC Duct Const Stds shall not be used. Risers on high velocity ducts shall be anchored in the center of the vertical run to allow ends of riser to move due to thermal expansion. Supports on the risers shall allow free vertical movement of the duct. Supports shall be attached only to structural framing members and concrete slabs. Supports shall not be anchored to metal decking unless a means is provided and approved for preventing the anchor from puncturing the metal decking. Where supports are required between structural framing members, suitable intermediate metal framing shall be provided. Where C-clamps are used, retainer clips shall be provided.

#### 3.1.7 Dust Control

To prevent the accumulation of dust, debris and foreign material during construction, temporary dust control protection shall be provided. The distribution system (supply and return) shall be protected with temporary seal-offs at all inlets and outlets at the end of each day's work. Temporary protection shall remain in place until system is ready for startup.

#### 3.1.8 Insulation

Thickness and application of insulation materials for ductwork, piping, and equipment shall be according to Section 15080A THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. Outdoor air intake ducts and plenums shall be externally insulated up to the point where the outdoor air reaches the conditioning unit.

#### 3.1.9 Duct Test Holes

Holes with closures or threaded holes with plugs shall be provided in ducts and plenums as indicated or where necessary for the use of pitot tube in balancing the air system. Extensions, complete with cap or plug, shall be provided where the ducts are insulated.

#### 3.1.10 Power Transmission Components Adjustment

V-belts and sheaves shall be tested for proper alignment and tension prior to operation and after 72 hours of operation at final speed. Belts on drive side shall be uniformly loaded, not bouncing. Alignment of direct driven couplings shall be to within 50 percent of manufacturer's maximum allowable range of misalignment.

#### 3.2 FIELD PAINTING AND COLOR CODE MARKING

Finish painting of items only primed at the factory, surfaces not specifically noted otherwise, and color code marking for piping shall be as specified in Section 09900 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

#### 3.3 DUCTWORK LEAK TEST

Ductwork leak test shall be performed for the entire air distribution and exhaust system, including fans, coils, filters, etc. designated as static pressure Class 750 Pa (3 inch water gauge) through Class 2500 Pa (10 inch water gauge). Test procedure, apparatus, and report shall conform to SMACNA Leakage Test Mnl. The maximum allowable leakage rate is 3 l/s per 10 square meters of duct surface. Ductwork leak test shall be completed with satisfactory results prior to applying insulation to ductwork exterior.

#### 3.4 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

Pipes shall be cleaned free of scale and thoroughly flushed of foreign matter. A temporary bypass shall be provided for water coils to prevent flushing water from passing through coils. Strainers and valves shall be thoroughly cleaned. Prior to testing and balancing, air shall be removed from water systems by operating the air vents. Temporary measures, such as piping the overflow from vents to a collecting vessel shall be taken to

avoid water damage during the venting process. Air vents shall be plugged or capped after the system has been vented. Inside of room fan-coil units air terminal units, ducts, plenums, and casing shall be thoroughly cleaned of debris and blown free of small particles of rubbish and dust and then shall be vacuum cleaned before installing outlet faces. Equipment shall be wiped clean, with traces of oil, dust, dirt, or paint spots removed. Temporary filters shall be provided prior to startup of all fans that are operated during construction, and new filters shall be installed after all construction dirt has been removed from the building, and the ducts, plenums, casings, and other items specified have been vacuum cleaned. System shall be maintained in this clean condition until final acceptance. Bearings shall be properly lubricated with oil or grease as recommended by the manufacturer. Belts shall be tightened to proper tension. Control valves and other miscellaneous equipment requiring adjustment shall be adjusted to setting indicated or directed. Fans shall be adjusted to the speed indicated by the manufacturer to meet specified conditions.

### 3.5 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

Testing, adjusting, and balancing shall be as specified in Section 15990A TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS. Testing, adjusting, and balancing shall begin only when the air supply and distribution, including controls, has been completed, with the exception of performance tests.

### 3.6 PERFORMANCE TESTS

After testing, adjusting, and balancing has been completed as specified, each system shall be tested as a whole to see that all items perform as integral parts of the system and temperatures and conditions are evenly controlled throughout the building. Corrections and adjustments shall be made as necessary to produce the conditions indicated or specified. Capacity tests and general operating tests shall be conducted by an experienced engineer. Tests shall cover a period of not less than 5 days for each system and shall demonstrate that the entire system is functioning according to the specifications. Coincidental chart recordings shall be made at points indicated on the drawings for the duration of the time period and shall record the temperature at space thermostats or space sensors, the humidity at space humidistats or space sensors and the ambient temperature and humidity in a shaded and weather protected area.

### 3.7 FIELD TRAINING

The Contractor shall conduct a training course for operating and maintenance personnel as designated by the Contracting Officer. Training shall be provided for a period of 40 hours of normal working time and shall start after the system is functionally complete but prior to the performance tests. The field instruction shall cover all of the items contained in the approved Operating and Maintenance Instructions.

-- End of Section --

## SECTION 15990A

## TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## ASSOCIATED AIR BALANCE COUNCIL (AABC)

AABC MN-1	(1989) National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems
-----------	--

## NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL BALANCING BUREAU (NEBB)

NEBB Procedural Stds	(1991) Procedural Standards for Testing Adjusting Balancing of Environmental Systems
----------------------	--

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

## SD-02 Shop Drawings

TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms; G, RE

Three copies of the TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms, no later than 21 days prior to the start of TAB field measurements.

## SD-03 Product Data

TAB Related HVAC Submittals; G, RE

A list of the TAB Related HVAC Submittals, no later than 7 days after the approval of the TAB Specialist.

TAB Procedures; G, RE

Proposed procedures for TAB, submitted with the TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms.

Calibration; G, RE

List of each instrument to be used during TAB, stating calibration requirements required or recommended by both the TAB Standard and the instrument manufacturer and the actual calibration history of the instrument, submitted with the TAB Procedures. The calibration history shall include dates calibrated, the qualifications of the calibration laboratory, and the calibration procedures used.

Systems Readiness Check; G, RE

Proposed date and time to begin the Systems Readiness Check, no later than 7 days prior to the start of the Systems Readiness Check.

TAB Execution; G, RE

Proposed date and time to begin field measurements, making adjustments, etc., for the TAB Report, submitted with the Systems Readiness Check Report.

TAB Verification; G, RE

Proposed date and time to begin the TAB Verification, submitted with the TAB Report.

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Design Review Report; G, RE

A copy of the Design Review Report, no later than 14 days after approval of the TAB Firm and the TAB Specialist.

Systems Readiness Check; G, RE

A copy of completed checklists for each system, each signed by the TAB Specialist, at least 7 days prior to the start of TAB Execution. All items in the Systems Readiness Check Report shall be signed by the TAB Specialist and shall bear the seal of the Professional Society or National Association used as the TAB Standard.

TAB Report; G, RE

Three copies of the completed TAB Reports, no later than 7 days after the execution of TAB. All items in the TAB Report shall be signed by the TAB Specialist and shall bear the seal of the Professional Society or National Association used as the TAB Standard.

TAB Verification Report; G, RE

Three copies of the completed TAB Verification Report, no later than 7 days after the execution of TAB Verification. All items in the TAB Verification Report shall be signed by the TAB Specialist and shall bear the seal of the Professional Society or National Association used as the TAB Standard.

#### SD-07 Certificates

Ductwork Leak Testing, ,

A written statement signed by the TAB Specialist certifying that the TAB Specialist witnessed the Ductwork Leak Testing, it was successfully completed, and that there are no known deficiencies related to the ductwork installation that will prevent TAB from producing satisfactory results.

TAB Firm; G, RE

Certification of the proposed TAB Firm's qualifications by either AABC or NEBB to perform the duties specified herein and in other related Sections, no later than 21 days after the Notice to Proceed. The documentation shall include the date that the Certification was initially granted and the date that the current Certification expires. Any lapses in Certification of the proposed TAB Firm or disciplinary action taken by AABC or NEBB against the proposed TAB Firm shall be described in detail.

TAB Specialist; G, RE

Certification of the proposed TAB Specialist's qualifications by either AABC or NEBB to perform the duties specified herein and in other related Sections, no later than 21 days after the Notice to Proceed. The documentation shall include the date that the Certification was initially granted and the date that the current Certification expires. Any lapses in Certification of the proposed TAB Specialist or disciplinary action taken by AABC or NEBB against the proposed TAB Specialist shall be described in detail.

### 1.3 SIMILAR TERMS

In some instances, terminology differs between the Contract and the TAB Standard primarily because the intent of this Section is to use the industry standards specified, along with additional requirements listed herein to produce optimal results. The following table of similar terms is provided for clarification only. Contract requirements take precedent over the corresponding AABC or NEBB requirements where differences exist.

## SIMILAR TERMS

Contract Term	AABC Term	NEBB Term
TAB Standard Systems.	National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems	Procedural Standards for Testing Adjusting Balancing of Environmental
TAB Specialist	TAB Engineer	TAB Supervisor
Systems Readiness Check	Construction Phase Inspection	Field Readiness Check & Preliminary Field Procedures.

## 1.4 TAB STANDARD

TAB shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the standard under which the TAB Firm's qualifications are approved, i.e., AABC MN-1or NEBB Procedural Stds, unless otherwise specified herein. All recommendations and suggested practices contained in the TAB Standard shall be considered mandatory. The provisions of the TAB Standard, including checklists, report forms, etc., shall, as nearly as practical, be used to satisfy the Contract requirements. The TAB Standard shall be used for all aspects of TAB, including qualifications for the TAB Firm and Specialist and calibration of TAB instruments. Where the instrument manufacturer calibration recommendations are more stringent than those listed in the TAB Standard, the manufacturer's recommendations shall be adhered to. All quality assurance provisions of the TAB Standard such as performance guarantees shall be part of this contract. For systems or system components not covered in the TAB Standard, TAB procedures shall be developed by the TAB Specialist. Where new procedures, requirements, etc., applicable to the Contract requirements have been published or adopted by the body responsible for the TAB Standard used (AABC or NEBB), the requirements and recommendations contained in these procedures and requirements shall be considered mandatory.

## 1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

## 1.5.1 TAB Firm

The TAB Firm shall be either a member of AABC or certified by the NEBB and certified in all categories and functions where measurements or performance are specified on the plans and specifications, including TAB of environmental systems the performance of clean rooms and clean air devices building systems commissioning and the measuring of sound and vibration in environmental systems. The certification shall be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the firm loses subject certification during this period, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Firm for approval. Any firm that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC or the NEBB within the five years preceding Contract Award shall not be eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems,

including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections to be performed by the TAB Firm shall be considered invalid if the TAB Firm loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by an approved successor. These TAB services are to assist the prime Contractor in performing the quality oversight for which it is responsible. The TAB Firm shall be a subcontractor of the prime Contractor, and shall report to and be paid by the prime Contractor.

#### 1.5.2 TAB Specialist

The TAB Specialist shall be either a member of AABC or an experienced technician of the Firm certified by the NEBB. The certification shall be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the Specialist loses subject certification during this period, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Specialist for approval. Any individual that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC or the NEBB within the five years preceding Contract Award shall not be eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections performed by the TAB Specialist shall be considered invalid if the TAB Specialist loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by the approved successor.

#### 1.6 TAB SPECIALIST RESPONSIBILITIES

All TAB work specified herein and in related sections shall be performed under the direct guidance of the TAB Specialist. The TAB Specialist shall participate in the commissioning process specified in Section 15995A COMMISSIONING OF HVAC SYSTEMS.

#### 1.7 TAB OF 2-COFS, 4-COFS, AND BATTALION HEADQUARTERS BUILDINGS

For AHU-1A,2A,1B, and HVU-1A,2A,3A,4A,1B, 2B, and Blower Coils BC-1A, 2A, 1B, 1C, TAB shall first be performed when the units are in occupied mode minimum outside air (non-economizer). Next, with all HVU, AHU, and BC (blower coils) operating in economizer mode with outside air damper 100% open, the drop in airflow for each unit shall meet requirements shown on the drawings and specifications. Submit for shop drawing for government approval.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 DESIGN REVIEW

The TAB Specialist shall review the Contract Plans and Specifications and advise the Contracting Officer of any deficiencies that would prevent the HVAC systems from effectively operating in accordance with the sequence of operation specified or prevent the effective and accurate TAB of the system. The TAB Specialist shall provide a Design Review Report individually listing each deficiency and the corresponding proposed corrective action necessary for proper system operation.

### 3.2 TAB RELATED HVAC SUBMITTALS

The TAB Specialist shall prepare a list of the submittals from the Contract Submittal Register that relate to the successful accomplishment of all HVAC TAB. The submittals identified on this list shall be accompanied by a letter of approval signed and dated by the TAB Specialist when submitted to the Government. The TAB Specialist shall also ensure that the location and details of ports, terminals, connections, etc., necessary to perform TAB are identified on the submittals.

### 3.3 TAB SCHEMATIC DRAWINGS AND REPORT FORMS

A schematic drawing showing each system component, including balancing devices, shall be provided for each system. Each drawing shall be accompanied by a copy of all report forms required by the TAB Standard used for that system. Where applicable, the acceptable range of operation or appropriate setting for each component shall be included on the forms or as an attachment to the forms. The schematic drawings shall identify all testing points and cross reference these points to the report forms and procedures.

### 3.4 DUCTWORK LEAK TESTING

The TAB Specialist shall witness the Ductwork Leak Testing specified in Section 15895A AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEM and approve the results as specified in Paragraph TAB RELATED HVAC SUBMITTALS.

### 3.5 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

#### 3.5.1 TAB Procedures

Step by step procedures for each measurement required during TAB Execution shall be provided. The procedures shall be oriented such that there is a separate section for each system. The procedures shall include measures to ensure that each system performs as specified in all operating modes, interactions with other components (such as exhaust fans, kitchen hoods, fume hoods, relief vents, etc.) and systems, and with all seasonal operating differences, diversity, simulated loads, and pressure relationships required.

#### 3.5.2 Systems Readiness Check

The TAB Specialist shall inspect each system to ensure that it is complete, including installation and operation of controls, and that all aspects of the facility that have any bearing on the HVAC systems, including installation of ceilings, walls, windows, doors, and partitions, are complete to the extent that TAB results will not be affected by any detail or touch-up work remaining. The TAB Specialist shall also verify that all items such as ductwork and piping ports, terminals, connections, etc., necessary to perform TAB shall be complete during the Systems Readiness Check.

### 3.5.3 Preparation of TAB Report

Preparation of the TAB Report shall begin only when the Systems Readiness Report has been approved. The Report shall be oriented so that there is a separate section for each system. The Report shall include a copy of the appropriate approved Schematic Drawings and TAB Related Submittals, such as pump curves, fan curves, etc., along with the completed report forms for each system. The operating points measured during successful TAB Execution and the theoretical operating points listed in the approved submittals shall be marked on the performance curves and tables. Where possible, adjustments shall be made using an "industry standard" technique which would result in the greatest energy savings, such as adjusting the speed of a fan instead of throttling the flow. Any deficiencies outside of the realm of normal adjustments and balancing during TAB Execution shall be noted along with a description of corrective action performed to bring the measurement into the specified range. If, for any reason, the TAB Specialist determines during TAB Execution that any Contract requirement cannot be met, the TAB Specialist shall immediately provide a written description of the deficiency and the corresponding proposed corrective action necessary for proper system operation to the Contracting Officer.

### 3.5.4 TAB Verification

The TAB Specialist shall recheck ten percent of the measurements listed in the Tab Report and prepare a TAB Verification Report. The measurements selected for verification and the individuals that witness the verification will be selected by the Contracting Officer's Representative (COR). The measurements will be recorded in the same manner as required for the TAB Report. All measurements that fall outside the acceptable operating range specified shall be accompanied by an explanation as to why the measurement does not correlate with that listed in the TAB Report and a description of corrective action performed to bring the measurement into the specified range. The TAB Specialist shall update the original TAB report to reflect any changes or differences noted in the TAB verification report and submit the updated TAB report. If over 20 percent of the measurements selected by the COR for verification fall outside of the acceptable operating range specified, the COR will select an additional ten percent for verification.

If over 20 percent of the total tested (including both test groups) fall outside of the acceptable range, the TAB Report shall be considered invalid and all contract TAB work shall be repeated beginning with the Systems Readiness Check.

### 3.5.5 Marking of Setting

Following approval of TAB Verification Report, the setting of all HVAC adjustment devices including valves, splitters, and dampers shall be permanently marked by the TAB Specialist so that adjustment can be restored if disturbed at any time.

### 3.5.6 Identification of Test Ports

The TAB Specialist shall permanently and legibly identify the location points of duct test ports. If the ductwork has exterior insulation, the identification shall be made on the exterior side of the insulation. All

penetrations through ductwork and ductwork insulation shall be sealed to prevent air leakage or to maintain integrity of vapor barrier.

-- End of Section --